This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

EducT
919
16.195

WRITING LATIN

BOOK ONE

BARSS

REVISED
EDITION

D. C. HEATH AND COMPANY

Educ T 919.16.195

HARVARD COLLEGE
LIBRARY

THE GIFT OF

GEORGE GRAFTON WILSON

Professor of International Law

Digitized by Google

3 2044 097 074 587

Rose D. Wilson.
6 Acacia St,
Cambridge, Mass.
1916.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

WRITING LATIN

BOOK ONE — SECOND YEAR WORK

BY

JOHN EDMUND BARSS

LATIN MASTER IN THE HOTCHKISS SCHOOL

REVISED EDITION, BASED ON LODGE'S VOCABULARY OF HIGH SCHOOL LATIN

D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS

BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO

Digitized by Google

Educ T 919.16.195

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
PROF. GEORGE G. WILSON
Sept 4, 1925

COPYRIGHT, 1903, BY
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING CO.

COPYRIGHT, 1910, BY
D. C. HEATH & CO.

1D6

Digitized by Google

PREFACE TO THE NEW EDITION

THE first twenty-six lessons of this revision are *identical in scope* with the original edition of WRITING LATIN — BOOK ONE. BOOK TWO may be taken up after completing these lessons, or the whole of BOOK ONE may be finished first, according to the needs of the class.

Exercises twenty-seven to forty, inclusive, contain a simple treatment of the *principal verb constructions.* Exercise forty-one consists of sixty sentences for review. By the addition of these exercises, by the improved vocabulary, and by the greater attention given to important idioms and phrases, the book has been adapted to the use of classes that are to take a college examination in Elementary Composition before reading Cicero. All the exercises are new, and are based on Professor Lodge's Vocabulary of High School Latin. The "Hints" have been revised, and references added to the Hale and Buck Latin Grammar. The general plan of the work is unchanged.

Each exercise is now *divided into two parts.* The first ten sentences include all the principles of grammar belonging to the lesson. This arrangement makes it possible for a class to cover the subject rapidly, using only the first part of the exercises, and reserving the second part for review, or omitting the later sentences altogether, if desirable.

The Special Vocabularies are now printed in full, and the words in them are arranged according to the parts

Digitized by Google

of speech. *Idioms and phrases* are also printed together at the end of each vocabulary. It is hoped that teachers will find this a convenience in assigning vocabulary reviews. With a few exceptions, the vocabulary is confined to the Caesar list of the Vocabulary of High School Latin. The frequent recurrence of these words, not only in Caesar, but in all the Latin usually read in schools, makes this list the nearest approach to a *scientific vocabulary* thus far achieved. The *grammatical nomenclature* is, in general, that of the Syntax of High School Latin, edited by Mr. Lee Byrne.

I am greatly indebted to a number of my pupils in The Hotchkiss School for their assistance in testing the Vocabulary.

J. E. B.

LAKEVILLE, CONNECTICUT,
January 28, 1910.

FROM THE PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

THE *method* of this little book is intended to provide a rational and systematic treatment of the difficulties that assail the beginner.

The *order of subjects* is unconventional. Beginning with the simplest forms of statement, the development of topics has aimed to bring together things naturally associated in the mind, and therefore often confounded. For instance, the Possessive Dative and the Possessive Genitive are contrasted in the same exercise; likewise the Infinitive with Subject Accusative and the Indirect Question. The confusion that arose under the unnatural method of

Digitized by Google

studying such things at different times disappears when the pupil must associate and compare in the same lesson things alike in English, but unlike in Latin.

The *gulf between English idiom* and the technical statements of the grammar is further lessened by "Hints," following and supplementing the grammatical references. These are written from the standpoint of one attempting to recognize in the formulas of English the marks of their corresponding Latin constructions. It is expected that teachers will insist on thorough study of the "Hints," as of equal importance with the grammar in preparation for writing the exercises.

By the *postponement of certain subjects* to BOOK TWO,[1] time is gained for necessary practice in the fundamentals. Not until frequent repetition has insured something like mastery of the Indicative Mood and the common case-constructions are the other moods introduced.

An *abundance of easy sentences* provides for accuracy. To get all the details of very simple sentences correct is an achievement, at first; and the accurate and perfect writing of such sentences is better than botched attempts at solving syntactical riddles. Every fifth exercise is a piece of continuous prose, involving the principles of the preceding four lessons.

LAKEVILLE, CONNECTICUT,
April 22, 1902.

[1] The most important of these are also treated in Lessons XXVII–XL of this revision. See first two paragraphs of the Preface to the New Edition.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS

PAGE

LESSON I. THE SIMPLE SENTENCE. TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE 1

LESSON II. ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE AGREEMENT. TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE, *Continued* 4

LESSON III. THE RELATIVE. ABLATIVE OF MEANS AND OF CAUSE 6

LESSON IV. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT AND OF MANNER 9

LESSON V. REVIEW 10

LESSON VI. DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT. ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT 11

LESSON VII. DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS. DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS 13

LESSON VIII. PASSIVE OF INTRANSITIVE VERBS 15

LESSON IX. DATIVE OF PURPOSE. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES 16

LESSON X. REVIEW 18

LESSON XI. POSSESSION 19

LESSON XII. PLACE WHERE. TIME WHEN. EXTENT IN SPACE AND TIME 21

LESSON XIII. GENITIVE OF QUALITY. ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION 23

LESSON XIV. COMPARISON 25

LESSON XV. REVIEW 26

LESSON XVI. PARTITIVE GENITIVE 27

Digitized by Google

PAGE

LESSON XVII. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES AND VERBS . . 30

LESSON XVIII. SEPARATION. SOURCE. MATERIAL. REVIEW OF PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS 32

LESSON XIX. *OPUS* AND *ŪSUS*. *DIGNUS* AND *INDIGNUS*. ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS. INFINITIVE 34

LESSON XX. REVIEW 36

LESSON XXI. PURPOSE. RESULT. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FEAR 37

LESSON XXII. INDIRECT QUESTIONS. ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE 41

LESSON XXIII. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE. ACCUSATIVE SUPINE 43

LESSON XXIV. TRANSLATION OF *MUST*, *OUGHT*, AND *MAY* 46

LESSON XXV. REVIEW 48

LESSON XXVI. COMMANDS. EXHORTATIONS. PROHIBITIONS 49

LESSON XXVII. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES 51

LESSON XXVIII. OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE. CLAUSES OF PROVISO. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES REVIEWED 54

LESSON XXIX. INDIRECT DISCOURSE. VERBS OF HOPING AND PROMISING 56

LESSON XXX. REVIEW 58

LESSON XXXI. PARTICIPLES. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE . 59

LESSON XXXII. *CUM* TEMPORAL. *UBI*. *POSTQUAM*. *SIMUL ATQUE* 62

LESSON XXXIII. *CUM* CAUSAL. *QUOD*. *QUONIAM* . . 65

LESSON XXXIV. *CUM* CONCESSIVE. *ETSI* AND *TAMETSI* . 67

LESSON XXXV. REVIEW 69

LESSON XXXVI. *ANTEQUAM* AND *PRIUSQUAM*. *DUM* AND *QUOAD* 71

Digitized by Google

PAGE

LESSON XXXVII. *QUĪN*. *QUŌ MINUS*. SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FIRST PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION 72

LESSON XXXVIII. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC. SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION 75

LESSON XXXIX. SUBJUNCTIVE IN DIRECT QUESTIONS. QUESTIONS AND COMMANDS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE . . 78

LESSON XL. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON . . 80

LESSON XLI. THE ABLATIVE SUPINE. SIXTY SENTENCES FOR GENERAL REVIEW 83

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES 87

VOCABULARY 111

Digitized by Google

NEW WRITING LATIN

BOOK ONE

LESSON I

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE. TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

The references are to the grammars of Gildersleeve and Lodge (G.), Allen and Greenough (A.), Bennett (B.), Harkness (H.), Hale and Buck (HB.), and Towle and Jenks' Caesar's Gallic War, Appendix (T.).

1. **Case of the Subject**: G. 203. A. 339. B. 166. H. 387. HB. 335. T. 5.

2. **Case of the Direct Object**: G. 328. A. 387. B. 172; 173. H. 404. HB. 390. T. 7.

3. **Case of Address**: G. 23. 5; 201. Remark 1. A. 340. B. 171. H. 402. HB. 400. T. 6.

4. **Concord of the Verb**: G. 211. A. 316. B. 254. H. 388. HB. 328; 329. T. 141–143.

5. **Active and Passive Voices**: G. 212; 213; 214; 216. A. 156; 387. b. B. 94. 1. H. 191; 192. HB. 288. 1, 2.

6. **Ablative of Agent**: G. 401 (second paragraph). A. 405 and Notes 2, 3. B. 216. H. 468. HB. 406. 1. T. 68.

7. **Tenses of Incomplete Action**: G. 227; 231; 242. A. 465; 470. Note; 471. a; 472. B. 257 complete; 260. 1, 2. H. 532; 534. 1, 2, 3; 536. HB. 468. 1–3. T. 145–148.

8. **Questions with *-ne* and *Nōnne*:** G. 454; 455. A. 332. b. B. 162. 2, a), c). H. 378 and 2. HB. 231. 1, b), c).

9. **Questions with *Num*:** G. 456. A. 332. b. B. 162. 2, b. H. 378. HB. 231. 1, d). T. Vocabulary.

HINTS

Present Tense. English has *three* forms of the present. Latin has but *one* form to render all of these; thus,

Digitized by Google

ENGLISH	LATIN
I write (simple present); *I am writing* (present progressive); *I do write* (present emphatic).	**scrībō.**

Position of *Nōn*. **Nōn** regularly stands before the word that it modifies; thus, *We were not writing* is always **Nōn scrībēbāmus**, and never in the reverse order.

Position of the Vocative. The vocative is best written after one or more words of the sentence; thus,

Soldiers, where are your standards? **Ubi, mīlitēs, sunt sīgna vestra?**

The Use of *Num*. The statement of the grammars that "**num** expects the answer 'no'" may be made practical as follows:

a. **Num** should be used in questions of the general form:

You did not do this, did you? **Num hōc fēcistī?**

The *not* . . . *did you* of the English is all represented by the **num** in Latin.

b. **Num** may be used as the sign of interrogation in any questions where the form or context implies that the questioner feels sure that his question is absurd or unnecessary in view of the facts — such a question as

Do men gather grapes of thorns? **Num colligunt dē spīnīs ūvās?**

Num often suggests irony, anger, or excitement on the part of the questioner.

Num, like **-ne** and **nōnne**, is omitted when the sentence is introduced by another interrogative word, as **quis, ubi, cūr**, etc.

Study the following sentences:

I accused him of parricide: did he shudder? was he disturbed?
Parricīdae eum accūsāvī: num horruit? num est commōtus?

Evidently the prisoner was calm — either innocent or stolid. If we change, now, the question to

Digitized by Google

Horruitne? estne commōtus?

we feel that the speaker is not sure of the prisoner's bearing under the cross-examination, and wishes to have the testimony of spectators. Lastly, if we write

Nōnne horruit? nōnne est commōtus?
Didn't he shudder? was he not disturbed?

it is clear that the speaker believes that the man *did* shudder and show agitation, and that he wishes to call the attention of the court to this evident fact.

EXERCISE I

In each Exercise (except the Review Exercises) all the grammatical principles of the Lesson are covered in the first ten sentences.

1. The Gauls are carrying on war. 2. War will be waged by the Gauls. 3. By whom (pl.) was Gaul inhabited? 4. Marcus, why are you not crossing the river? 5. Is war being waged by the Gauls? 6. Will not the river be crossed by the army? 7. The Gauls are not crossing the river, are they? 8. Who will cross the river and carry on the war? 9. Marcus was not crossing the river, was he? 10. Are the Gauls waging war?

11. Is not part of Gaul inhabited by Celts? 12. They are marching through part of the province. 13. Rivers separate the divisions of Gaul. 14. Was the army crossing the river? 15. Will not the rivers be crossed by the armies? 16. War was not being carried on by Marcus, was it? 17. The province is not inhabited by Gauls, is it? 18. Who inhabit the province? 19. The Gauls will not inhabit the province, will they? 20. They won't march through the province, will they?

Digitized by Google

LESSON II

ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE AGREEMENT. TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE, CONTINUED

1. **Attributive Agreement. Apposition**: G. 289–291; 320; 321. A. 281; 282; 285. 1, 2; 286 and a; 287. 1. B. 169. 1, 2; 233. 2; 234; 235. *A*, 1, *B*, 1. H. 393–395. 1, 2. HB. 316; 317. 1, 2, a; 318; 319. 1; 320. I, II; 321. I; 323. 1, 2. T. 1–4; 109; 110.

2. **Predicate Adjective and Predicate Noun**: G. 205; 206; 211; 286; 340. A. 283; 284; 285. 2; 287. 2–4; 391–393. a. B. 167; 168 and 2; 177. 1, 2; 235. *A*, 2, *B*, 2. H. 393. 8; 394; 395. 1, 2; 410. 1. HB. 317. 3; 319. II; 320. III; 321. II. T. 1; 3; 109.

3. **Tenses of Completed Action**: G. 236. 1, 2; 239; 244; A. 473; 476; 478; B. 257; 262; 263; 264. H. 537. 1, 2; 538. 2; 539; 540. HB. 468. 4–6. T. 149.

HINTS

Agreement. The somewhat complicated rules of agreement depend on the following principles:

a. An adjective or a noun used in attributive or predicate agreement has the same *case* as the word (or words) which it describes.

b. The *gender* and *number* of such adjectives or nouns will also be the same as those of the word or words which they describe, so far as circumstances allow. Note the special rules given by the grammar for one adjective modifying two or more words different in gender or number.

Perfect Tense. The simple past tense in English is sometimes ambiguous, and we can then only guess whether a Roman would have used the perfect or the imperfect. Thus,

The soldier was brave

might be

Mīles *fuit* fortis

Digitized by Google

(that is, the soldier was once brave, and is so no longer, or was brave on some particular occasion); or

Mīles *erat* fortis

(that is, the soldier was habitually brave).

But in

The soldier was killed

only the perfect, **interfectus est**, could be used, because the imperfect, **interficiēbātur**, would mean either *he was being killed*, which the sentence does not suggest, or *he was killed a number of times!*

EXERCISE II

1. [There][1] are three divisions of Gaul. 2. We have called the traders friends. 3. But we have not been called friends by the traders. 4. Marcus, a brave general, had crossed the river. 5. Already the three rivers will have been crossed by Marcus, the brave general. 6. Whom had you called friends, Marcus? 7. By whom had you been called friends? 8. The Belgae, foes of the brave Romans, had already crossed the river. 9. Then the Belgae were our friends, but now they are our enemies. 10. We had been called friends; but we were not waging war then.[2]

11. All have not been brave, have they? 12. These had formerly been friends, but now they were enemies. 13. The march had not been long, but at length the army was crossing the river. 14. We shall not be kept away by our friends, the Romans. 15. Had we not already crossed the banks of three long rivers? 16. The rivers have at length been seen by the Romans. 17. They will have seen the enemy; they will not be crossing the river.

[1] Words in square brackets [ ] are to be omitted in translation.

[2] Adverbs generally precede the words which they modify.

Digitized by Google

18. Our friends, the Romans, had not seen the enemy; but they themselves had been seen by them (**ille**).[1]
19. We had not been seen by our friends, the Romans.
20. The leader himself had not seen that river.

LESSON III

THE RELATIVE. ABLATIVE OF MEANS AND OF CAUSE

1. **Syntax of the Relative**: G. 614 and Remarks. A. 305 and a; 306. B. 250. 1, 2, 3. H. 396 and 2, 3. HB. 322. T. 134–136.
2. **Ablative of Means**: G. 401. A. 409. B. 218. H. 476. HB. 423. T. 71; 72.
3. **Ablative of Cause**: G. 408 and Remarks 2 and 3. A. 404. a–c. HB. 444 complete. B. 219. H. 475. T. 84; 85.

HINTS

The Relative. In such a sentence as

Mīlitēs	**quōs laudāvit**	**fortēs erant,**
The soldiers	*whom he praised*	*were brave,*

there are two parts. There is first the statement,

Mīlitēs fortēs erant, *The soldiers were brave*;

then there is the clause,

quōs laudāvit, *whom he praised,*

which describes **mīlitēs.** Such a clause as this last, containing some form of the relative pronoun and used to modify or define a noun, is called a Relative Clause.

The noun modified or defined by the relative clause is called the Antecedent of the relative.

The relative has the same gender, number, and person as its antecedent. Thus, both **mīlitēs** and **quōs** are masculine gender, plural number, and third person.

[1] Words in parentheses ( ) are explanatory.

Digitized by Google

The *case* of the relative, however, has nothing to do with that of the antecedent. Thus, in the sentence just considered, **mīlitēs** is nominative, subject of **erant**, but **quōs** is accusative, object of **laudāvit**. Since a pronoun, as its name implies, is a word used *for* a noun (generally to avoid the necessity of repeating the noun), its case is that which its antecedent would have if it occupied the same position. Thus, by substituting the antecedent for the relative in the above sentence, we should have

Mīlitēs — mīlitēs laudāvit — fortēs erant,
The soldiers — the soldiers he praised — were brave,

in which it is clear that the second **mīlitēs** is the object of **laudāvit.**

Ablative of Means. *With* or *by* is a sign of this ablative wherever we may substitute *by means of* without altering the sense; thus,

The master was killed with a sword, **Dominus gladiō occīsus est.**

Remember

(*a*) that the ablative of means never takes a preposition;

(*b*) that the person with whom the act originates is the *agent*, not the means, and that **ā** or **ab** must be used to express agency; thus,

The master was killed by the slave with a sword,
Dominus ā servō gladiō interfectus est.

Ablative of Cause. Various prepositions in English are used in phrases that tell the *reason* or *motive* for an act. Generally we may recognize such phrases by observing that they answer the question "Why?" and that we may substitute for the preposition employed the words *because of* or *on account of* without altering the sense. Thus, in

They were pale with fright, **Pallidī timōre erant,**

we have the answer to the question "Why were they pale?" and we may substitute *because of* or *on account of* for *with,*

Digitized by Google

and not alter the sense. What questions would the following sentences answer?

I was delighted with your gift.
The soldiers were blamed for their rashness.

EXERCISE III

1. The traders whom you have seen are not Gauls. 2. Will not the war which they are waging on account of the influence of that leader be [a] long [one]? 3. The river will be crossed by the army by-means-of a bridge. 4. They will be excited by the influence of the leaders. 5. Was the bridge by which they were crossing the river [a] long [one]? 6. The leader whose army is crossing the bridge is called brave by the enemy. 7. Had we called the generals brave whose soldiers were marching through the province? 8. The traders will be thoroughly terrified by the war which we shall then be waging. 9. These nations had engaged in daily battles (abl. of means). 10. The battles in which they used-to-contend were of-daily-occurrence.

11. [There] is one part of Gaul which is inhabited by the Belgae. 12. There is another part which the Celts inhabit. 13. The generals were excited on account of many things. 14. The things by which we are excited are many. 15. All these tribes which inhabit Gaul differ from one another. 16. The third part of Gaul was inhabited by those who in their own language were called Celts. 17. The bridge which I built (made) was small. 18. The Gauls, whose land slopes toward the north, were often enemies of the Romans. 19. Were not all the rivers whose banks were crossed by Caesar's soldiers large [ones]? 20. The territories of the enemy were confined, for-the-reason that they were bounded by high mountains.

Digitized by Google

LESSON IV

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT AND OF MANNER

1. **Ablative of Accompaniment**: G. 392 and Remark 1. A. 413. a, b. B. 222 and 1. H. 473. 1; 474. 2, Note 1. HB. 418; 419. 1–4; 420. T. 76; 77.

2. **Ablative of Manner**: G. 399. A. 412. a, b. B. 220 and 1. H. 473. 3 and Note. HB. 445. 1–3. T. 78.

3. **Position of *Cum***: G. 413. Remark 1. A. 143. f; 150. d. B. 142. 4. H. 175. 7; 182. 2. HB. 418. a.

HINTS

When to use *Cum*. We have already had *with* as a sign of the ablative of means; thus,

We grasp with the hand (*with* = *by means of*), **Manū prehendimus**;

and of the ablative of cause; thus,

The king was white with rage (*with* = *because of*), **Rēx īrā pallidus erat.**

With may also denote accompaniment; thus,

Caesar set out with two legions (*with* = *together with*),
Caesar cum duābus legiōnibus profectus est;

and also the manner in which an act is performed; thus,

The messenger ran with great speed (*i.e.* in a very speedy manner),
Nūntius magnā cum celeritāte cucurrit.

The preposition **cum** is never used except with the ablative of accompaniment and the ablative of manner.

EXERCISE IV

1. The general crossed the river with a great army. 2. They were carrying on the war with a great [air of] authority. 3. We were not pleased with the speech which we heard. 4. We shall march with you, Marcus, through the country of the Gauls. 5. These nations were greatly

Digitized by Google

alarmed by the arrival of Caesar with a large (great) army. 6. The leader came with all his forces, who fought against (with) the enemy with great valor. 7. The war which was being waged by the Romans against (with) the Gauls was brought-to-an-end by this battle. 8. All these matters were accomplished with great swiftness. 9. Will they not be wounded by the soldiers' javelins? 10. It will be very dangerous for you to climb (with great danger you will climb) those lofty mountains.

11. The soldiers were hindered by mountains and rivers, which[1] they nevertheless crossed with the greatest courage. 12. At length the spirits of those with whom we were marching became cast down (were wearied) because of the long journey. 13. Who has never struggled with himself? 14. Not only Marcus, but also all our friends will set out together with us. 15. Those with whom we have climbed high mountains and crossed deep rivers will not be alarmed by this. 16. Those with whom we struggle are not always enemies. 17. He won't set out with all the traders who came with him, will he? 18. Won't you come with me? 19. The general had set out with all his forces. 20. He was wounded with spears by the soldiers with whom he was marching.

LESSON V

REVIEW

EXERCISE V

Part of Gaul had been conquered by the Romans; part was free. The Romans called that part which they had conquered the Province. The Province was not a large part of the whole of Gaul. Gaul was not the only

[1] G. 614. 5. A. 305. a. B. 250. 2. H. 398. 2. HB. 323. 2.

Digitized by Google

Roman province: who has not heard [of] these names — Spain, Africa, Asia, Sicily, Egypt? Gaius Julius Caesar was appointed proconsul of Gaul by the Roman senate. Those who governed the Roman provinces were called either proconsuls or propraetors. The proconsuls generally had an army; the propraetors had none (did not have). [There] were four legions in the army of Caesar the proconsul. With all these forces he (ille) crossed the borders of the Province, fought with the Gauls in many (and)[1] fierce battles, [and][2] conquered the Helvetii, Belgae, Nervii, [and][2] Veneti. The Gauls were often greatly-alarmed by the swiftness of [their][3] Roman enemies, who went by very long (great) marches through woods and across mountains and rivers. The Romans' camps were defended by earthworks and ditches; the Gauls did not fortify their camps well, but defended themselves by means of [their][3] forests and marshes.

[1] G. 481. 1. A. 323. d. B. 241. 3. H. (no reference). HB. (no reference).
[2] G. 481. 2. A. 323. c. B. 341. 1, a), b), c). H. 657. 6. HB. 307. 1, c.
[3] G. 312. A. 302. c. B. 243. 1. H. 501. HB. 258.

LESSON VI

DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT. ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT

1. **Indirect Object**: G. 344; 345. A. 362 and a. B. 186; 187. I. H. 423; 424 and 2. HB. 365. T. 19.

2. **Limit of Motion**: G. 337 and Remarks 1, 2, 4; 416. 1; 418. 1, 2. A. 221. 2, a, 12, 1, a–c, 22, 1; 426. 2; 427. 2; 428. c, d. B. 182. 1, a), b), 2, a, 3. H. 418. 1, 2, 4; 419. 1. HB. 381; 450 and b; 457. 1. T. 94; 95.

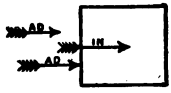
HINTS

Translation of *to*. When *to* implies motion, as in

The farmer has gone to the field,

Digitized by Google

it must be rendered by the accusative with **in** or **ad**. For the rule regarding the omission of **in** or **ad**, see the Grammar. The general force of these prepositions may be gathered from the following diagram:



To as the sign of the indirect object does not imply motion, and is rendered by the dative; thus,

He gave a field to his son, **Fīliō agrum dedit.**

Remember

(*a*) that the indirect object is often found without the preposition ***to;*** thus,

He gave his son a field;

(*b*) that while in English the indirect object is often made the subject of the passive, this must not be done in writing Latin. The direct object of the active must be made the subject of the passive, the indirect object remaining in the dative; so that such a sentence as

His son was given a field

would always take the form,

A field was given (to) his son, **Ager fīliō datus est.**

EXERCISE VI

1. What were you saying to the trader whom I saw? 2. What were the traders bringing to the Gauls? 3. What are they taking to Spain? what to Rome? 4. To whom shall you give the javelins which you have? 5. To whom shall you send the javelins? 6. They came to a town which the soldiers were strengthening by a wall and a ditch. 7. I gave a letter to the soldiers, which they will send to their general. 8. The captives will be sent to Rome,

Digitized by Google

where they will be given their[1] freedom. 9. They are free to whom liberty has been given by the general. 10. They went to Rome; to Athens; to Spain; to Gaul; to Corinth; to the town; to the city; to a small island; to Sicily.

11. The other prisoners also had been taken to the city, where they were given their liberty. 12. To what limits does the ocean extend? 13. Shall the kingdom be given to a man (use form of **is**) who has never set a prisoner free? 14. Soldiers, why are you not embarking on those ships? 15. They will not give the chief-command, will they, to one (**is**) whom the soldiers have never followed? 16. We came to a side of the camp which was protected by a broad river. 17. These things will not be said to the multitude. 18. Nothing was heard by those to whom the trader was speaking (use **loquor**, with **cum** and abl.). 19. We are returning to the country; the city does not delight us. 20. Caesar wiil start for Gaul with four legions; but many of them will never return home.

LESSON VII

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS. DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

1. **Dative with Special Verbs**: G. 346 and Note 3. A. 367 and a; 369. B. 187. II, a and Note. H. 426. 1 and Note 1, 2 and Note. HB. 362 and Footnote 3. T. 22–25.

2. **Dative with Compounds**: G. 347. A. 370. a, b. B. 187. III, 1, 2. H. 429. HB. 376, a. T. 27, 1, 2, and list of verbs.

HINTS

a. Do not fall into the error of thinking that all compound verbs take the dative. In fact, the only safe way

[1] See Footnote 3 to Exercise V.

Digitized by Google

is to consult the Vocabulary for the use of each verb separately.

b. Remember that other prepositions than *to* or *for* may require the dative in Latin. Thus, in

Caesar placed Labienus in command of the tenth legion,

of is not a sign of the genitive, but *placed-in-command-of* is equivalent to the single word **praefēcit**. The person who is placed in command is made the direct object of the verb, that of which he is made commander, the indirect object; thus,

Caesar Labiēnum decimae legiōnī praefēcit.

c. Do not forget that **iuvō** and **adiuvō**, *help*, **dēficiō**, *fail*, **iubeō**, *command*, and **dēlectō**, *delight*, *charm*, take the accusative.

EXERCISE VII

1. The general has persuaded the soldiers. 2. Caesar will command the Gauls. 3. Many chiefs of the Gauls were eager for a revolution. 4. Marcus is-in-command-of the cavalry. 5. All who are in the town will resist the enemy bravely. 6. Caesar was especially indulgent to the tenth legion. 7. The soldiers to whom Caesar has shown especial favor (has been especially indulgent) will never harm him. 8. Generals whom their soldiers always obey will not be-greatly-alarmed by the enemy. 9. Don't you believe me? 10. Did not this news please you, Caesar?

11. The horseman helped the foot-soldiers who were resisting the enemy. 12. Caesar will make war on the Gauls. 13. War will be made on the Gauls by Caesar. 14. The chiefs who take our side will not obey Caesar. 15. Caesar will make a requisition for grain from the Gauls.[1] 16. Grain will be ordered from the Gauls[1] by

[1] With **imperō** the thing demanded is in the accusative; the person of whom the demand is made, in the dative.

Digitized by Google

Caesar. 17. It will not be easy for us to persuade (not easily shall we persuade) those who do not believe us. 18. Those on whom war had been made were bravely resisting the cavalry. 19. Caesar placed Labienus in command of the tenth legion. 20. Labienus was placed by Caesar in command of the tenth legion.

LESSON VIII

PASSIVE OF INTRANSITIVE VERBS

1. **Impersonal Use of Passive**: G. 208. 2; 217. A. 372. B. 187. II, b. H. 426. 3. HB. 290. a, 1); 364. 2. T. 26; 27, Note.

HINTS

We have already found that in Latin the passive of *I give (to) you books* must always be *books are given to you*, not *you are given books* — **librī tibi dantur**, not **tū librōs daris.**

On exactly the same principle, the passive of **tibi crēdō**, which means nearly *I give (to) you belief*, can only be **tibi crēditur**, *belief is given (to) you*, and not **crēderis**, *you are believed.*

In the passive, other intransitive verbs are used thus "impersonally" for the same reason, even if we cannot always supply an English paraphrase which would make the dative seem natural to us.

EXERCISE VIII

1. Caesar will persuade the soldiers. 2. The soldiers will be persuaded by Caesar. 3. We shall spare those whom we have pardoned. 4. You will be both pardoned

Digitized by Google

and spared by us. 5. The general will be obeyed by the cavalry. 6. The state was persuaded by the chief. 7. You will never persuade a large-number of men. 8. Many men will never be persuaded. 9. The Helvetii were persuaded by the speeches of the chiefs, whom they had always obeyed; and-therefore (on account of which thing) they will get-ready a great number of carts. 10. But two hundred did not obey him.

11. He is not obeyed by two hundred, and he will not spare them (for *and . . . them* say *whom*). 12. You will be easily resisted by forty horsemen. 13. The tenth legion is especially favored (indulged) by Caesar. 14. Who will be pardoned by the king? 15. Those who are pardoned by Caesar will make peace with the Roman people. 16. We shall establish peace and friendship with those states on which we made war. 17. A man (**quīdam**) who is always obeyed by the Gauls will undertake the embassy. 18. One (see 17) who is trusted by all the states will undertake the embassy. 19. The man (**is**) who is in charge of the cavalry will never be harmed by us. 20. Are there not two hundred infantry and eighty cavalry who are not trusted by the general?

LESSON IX

DATIVE OF PURPOSE. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

1. **Dative of Purpose**: G. 356. 2, 3. A. 382. 1, 2. B. 191. 1, 2. H. 433. 1, 2, 3. HB. 360. a, b; 361. T. 32.

2. **Dative with Adjectives**: G. 359. A. 383; 384. B. 192. 1, 2. H. 434. 1, 2. HB. 362. I–III. T. 33.

Digitized by Google

HINTS

Dative of Purpose (**"Object for Which;" "Service;" "Double Dative"**). The following points should be noted:

(*a*) The English equivalent for this dative is a predicate noun, or an appositive with *as*.

(*b*) The construction is customary in Latin only with a limited number of abstract nouns, and appears to be in part an attempt to avoid asserting that a concrete noun is *identical* with an abstract noun; thus,

You are a help to me is **Mihi auxiliō es**;
but *You are a friend to me* is **Mihi amīcus es.**

EXERCISE IX

1. The ditches are a [means of] safety to the camp. 2. The Romans were not like the Gauls. 3. He will send up the cavalry as a reënforcement to the legion. 4. This place is not suitable for a camp. 5. Are not they selecting a place for a camp?[1] 6. The Gauls were not a match for the Romans, were they? 7. Won't the cavalry be a hindrance to us? 8. Are the Germans friendly to the Gauls? 9. Many things were useful (for a use) to Caesar in (**ad**)[1] this war which he was carrying on. 10. Two legions will be left as a protection to this town.

11. These Gauls were neighbors (neighboring) to the Province. 12. Are they nearest to the Germans? 13. A sword has been given me as a reward by the lieutenant. 14. These places are next to the ocean. 15. Some lakes are like small seas. 16. We shall never be believed by people who are like him. 17. We had come as aid to

[1] The accusative with **ad** is regularly used to denote the end in view, except in a few phrases such as **locum dēligere**, *choose a spot*, **diem dīcere**, *appoint a day*, where the dative is used.

Digitized by Google

Caesar. 18. On account of his courage, he was chosen general of the entire Roman army. 19. Whom have you chosen [as] leader[1] of the expedition? 20. Cassius had been appointed lieutenant by Caesar himself.

LESSON X

REVIEW

EXERCISE X

The Helvetii were leading their forces through the lands of the Sequani. But these territories were next to the Province, for which reason their expedition did not please Caesar, the Roman general. What, then (**igitur**), did he say? "The Helvetii will be coming into our Province; they will lay waste the fields; they will kill the people; soon they will have arrived at the river Saône. Then my men (soldiers) will either kill them or prevent them from crossing (use the infinitive: *prevent them to cross*).

Accordingly the Helvetii came to the banks of the river. Three fourths (parts) had already crossed the stream (river), but one division (part) had not yet set out. On them he makes an attack, and puts many to death. The river was a great hindrance to these, and-on-this-account (on which account) very little resistance was made (it was resisted very little) to the Romans.

Then Caesar led his army across the river and overtook the rest of the Helvetians' forces. These, however, were alarmed by his unexpected arrival, and sent envoys to him. Nevertheless, peace was not made with the Romans; the envoys would not (did not) accept the terms which Caesar

[1] Do not try to translate the *as* introducing a predicate noun after a verb of choosing, appointing, etc.

Digitized by Google

offered them, nor give him hostages. Accordingly they again prepared the necessaries of war (those things which were for a use to war: see Exercise IX, Sentence 9), and in command of their forces they placed chiefs, brave and of-noble-birth, who were obeyed by all.

LESSON XI

POSSESSION

1. **Possessive Genitive**: G. 362; 366. A. 343 and b. B. 198. H. 439. HB. 339; 340. T. 37; 46.

2. **Possessive Pronouns**: G. 362. Remark 1; 309 and 1. A. 299; 302 and a. B. 86. 1, 2; 243. 1. H. 176; 439. Note 4; 440. 1, Note 2; 503. HB. 339. a; 254–256; 260; 261; 262. 1. T. 38.

3. **Dative of Possessor**: G. 349. A. 373 and Note. B. 190; 359. 1. H. 430. HB. 374 and a. T. 30.

HINTS

Genitive and Dative. Compare the following:

(*a*) *The long spear was Caesar's*, or *belonged to Caesar.*
(*b*) *Caesar had a long spear.*

In Latin, (*a*) would become

Longa hasta Caesaris erat,

while (*b*) would be

Longam hastam Caesar habēbat,
or **Longa hasta Caesarī erat.**

The genitive with **sum** tells *to whom* something belongs; the dative with **sum** tells *what* some one possesses. *These cannot be interchanged.*

The two equivalent methods of translating *have* may be graphically represented thus:

	Possessor	Verb	Thing Possessed
English.	Subject,	*have*,	object.
Latin.	Nominative,	**habeō**,	accusative.
	Dative,	**sum**,	nominative.

Digitized by Google

Possessive Pronouns and Adjectives. Remember that for *my*, *your*, *our*, the genitives of **ego**, **tū**, etc., are not to be used, but only the possessives **meus**, **tuus**, etc., in agreement with the object possessed; thus,

my horse, **equus meus**;
our horse, **equus noster.**

For *his*, *her*, *its*, *their*, use the possessive **suus** when the possessor is the subject of the sentence. Elsewhere use the possessive genitive of the pronoun **is**; thus,

(*a*) *The lieutenant gave his* (*own*) *horse to the general*,
Lēgātus imperātōrī equum suum dedit.

(*b*) *The general received his* (the lieutenant's) *present gladly*,
Imperātor dōnum ēius libenter accēpit.

Finally, remember that unless it is emphatic, the possessive pronoun is often omitted in Latin.

How to say "Own." When *own* is used to emphasize the idea of possession, the genitive of **ipse**, *self*, may be used, with or without a possessive pronoun. Unless the emphasis is very strong, however, the possessive pronoun alone will be sufficient. Thus,

for your own sake { **vestrā causā** or **vestrā ipsōrum causā.**
tuā causā or **tuā ipsīus causā.**

EXERCISE XI

1. The territories of the Gauls are far away. 2. Our country is next to the country of the Helvetians. 3. This chief has two hundred horsemen. 4. This father has three sons, whose names are Marcus, Quintus, [and][1] Gaius. 5. Diviciacus had seized the throne which his father had held before [him]. 6. Titus was leading his own army, of which he had been placed in command by

[1] See Footnote 2 to Exercise V.

Digitized by Google

Caesar. 7. Were these soldiers led by their own commander? 8. Marcus and Quintus were brothers; Marcus finished both his own and his brother's (say simply *his*, using the proper pronoun) work. 9. In the same way Marcus' work will be finished by his brother. 10. The same men do not do the same things; each one finishes his own work.

11. The Gauls did not have the same institutions as (which) the Romans. 12. We have no (not) supply of grain. 13. Marcus, the grain which you have got ready is not yours, but mine. 14. The customs of the Gauls were not the same as [those][1] of the Germans. 15. This chief had ten retainers. 16. The weapons of the Romans were spears and shields and swords. 17. What were the weapons which the Romans had? 18. You do not have your own weapons, soldiers; whose are the arms which you are bearing? 19. The Helvetii had twelve towns and four hundred villages. 20. There were twelve towns and four hundred villages belonging-to (of) the Helvetians.

LESSON XII

PLACE WHERE. TIME WHEN. EXTENT IN SPACE AND TIME

1. **Place Where**: G. 385; 386 and Remark 2; 388; 411 and Remark 1. A. 426. 3; 427. 3, Footnote 1, a; 428. d, e. H. 483–485. 2. HB. 433; 449 and a. T. 91–93; 101; 102.

2. **Time When**: G. 393. A. 423. 1. B. 230. 1; 231. H. 486; 487. HB. 439. T. 89.

3. **Extent**: G. 335; 336. A. 423. 2; 425. B. 181. 1. H. 417. HB. 387. I, II. T. 14.

[1] Regularly omitted in sentences of this character.

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE XII

1. Where is Caesar? He is in the camp. 2. But how long will he stay there? He has already been in the camp twelve hours; soon he will come here. 3. At what time did he reach the camp? He came at the fourth hour. 4. How far has Caesar's army advanced to-day? 5. The soldiers have advanced thirty miles, and arrived at a town of the Gauls. 6. We arrived at Rome in the middle of summer, and shall remain here two months; but we shall be at Corinth in the winter. 7. And where shall you go then? We shall go many miles across the sea to Egypt. 8. Where are you? Here we are. Where are you going (setting out)? [Over] there. 9. That summer Caesar set out for Gaul with all his forces. 10. We have been at Rome and Athens and Carthage and Corinth.

11. You were my friend in prosperity; in adversity you are not my friend. 12. We started at dawn; towards evening we came to a large river which we did not cross. 13. We stayed in camp all (the whole) night. 14. But at midnight the enemy set out and came to the same river. 15. During (**dē**) the fourth watch we crossed the river and struggled with the enemy on the farther bank. 16. Some fought for many hours right in the river (in the river itself). 17. Their swords were a great hindrance to those who were struggling on the banks and in the very river. 18. Will the war be carried on in Spain? 19. At what time did you come? Towards evening. How long shall you stay? Not many hours. 20. Where were you? At Rome in Italy. How far did you go? Two hundred miles.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XIII

GENITIVE OF QUALITY. ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

1. **Genitive of Quality (Descriptive Genitive)**: G. 365 and Remark. A. 345 complete. B. 203. 1, a, 2, 5. H. 440. 3. HB. 355. T. 44; 45.

2. **Ablative of Quality (Descriptive Ablative)**: G. 400 and Remark 1. A. 415 complete. B. 224. 1. H. 473. 2 and Note 2. HB. 443. T. 80.

3. **Ablative of Specification (Respect)**: G. 397. A. 418. B. 226. H. 480. 2, 3. HB. 441. T. 82; 86.

HINTS

It will be worth while, after studying the grammar of this lesson and before writing the exercise, to compare three examples:

a. Genitive of Quality —

Orgetorix was a man of great influence,
Orgetorīx vir magnae auctōritātis erat.

b. Ablative of Quality —

The Germans were (men) of great stature,
Germānī magnīs corporibus erant.

c. Ablative of Specification —

The Romans surpassed the enemy in the number of their ships,
Rōmānī hostīs numerō nāvium superābant.

With regard to the ablative of specification, it will be noticed that English *in* is to be rendered by Latin **in** only when it denotes *position*, literal or figurative; not when it denotes time, nor when it means *in respect to* or *with regard to.*

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE XIII

1. The town at which they had arrived was surrounded by a ditch fifteen feet wide (of fifteen feet). 2. The men were defending this town with the utmost courage. 3. Did the Helvetii surpass the rest-of the Gauls in courage? 4. There is a mountain of great height on the other bank of the river. 5. These deep rivers differed from each other in breadth. 6. Marcus and Quintus did not have (were not of) the same boldness. 7. A man of this kind will be obeyed by all because of his [personal] influence. 8. This wall was sixteen feet high (see Sentence 1), and our men scaled it with difficulty (for *and . . . it*, say *which*). 9. Orgetorix was [a man] of the highest nobility and influence among his own [people]. 10. In popularity he surpassed all who were of the same high-rank.

11. Both Marcus and Quintus are bold men; but Marcus is not equal to Quintus in his audacity. 12. The Gauls and the Romans were not characterized-by (express by abl. of quality) the same [degree of] daring. 13. Marcus, a man of the highest popularity among his own people (see Sentence 9), did not surpass the rest in courage. 14. The Gauls were people with a high [degree] of training in arms. 15. They were not well disposed (of good spirit) toward the Romans, nor were they friendly to the Germans. 16. Do they not occupy lands which surpass ours in extent (breadth)? 17. Marcus is a man of the greatest influence among those of whom he has been placed in command. 18. You will never persuade such a man. 19. We shall not be resisted by those who are not a match for us in courage. 20. They went for a hundred miles through the lands of the enemy, to a river whose width was (of) two hundred feet.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XIV

COMPARISON

1. **Comparative**: G. 296. Remark 1, (a), (b); 297. 2. A. 406; 407 and a; 291. a. B. 217. 1, 2; 240. 1. H. 471 and 1; 498. HB. 416, a, c, d; 417. T. 69; 70; 116.

2. **Degree of Difference.** G. 403. A. 414. B. 223. H. 479. 1, 2, 3. T. 81.

HINTS

In writing the following exercise, it will be well to express comparisons both with and without **quam**, wherever that is possible. Of course **quam** must always be used when the first of the words compared is in any other case than nominative or accusative. Thus, if we should try to translate, without using **quam**, *The farmer's horse is larger than the physician's*, we should have **Agricolae equus māior est medicō**; that is, *The farmer's horse is larger than the physician!*

We must write, therefore, **Agricolae equus māior est quam medicī.**

EXERCISE XIV

1. Seas are deeper than lakes. 2. Were the Romans much braver than the Germans? 3. On that day we advanced a little farther than on the day before. 4. Upon the death of Orgetorix, the Helvetii prepared the necessaries of war (see Exercise X, last sentence) with much greater eagerness than [they did] before. 5. I do not approve of the plan which you have formed; it is a little worse, even, than that which you had formed previously. 6. Were not the plans of the Romans much better than [those] of the Gauls? 7. I am three years older than my brother, who is very brave. 8. But my sister is two years younger than I. 9. More quickly than you would suppose

Digitized by Google

this rumor will travel from the east to the west, where very many people will be excited by it. 10. He is a man of greater courage than good sense.

11. The soldiers had advanced too far. 12. They were prevailed upon not less by his authority than by his popularity. 13. These places are hemmed in by rather lofty mountains and a very deep river. 14. Were not the horsemen of the Germans both swifter and more courageous than [those] of Caesar? 15. These soldiers were not braver, were they, than those who sent them under the yoke? 16. Caesar set out for Hither Gaul a little earlier than he was in the habit [of doing]. 17. Isn't Marcus a little braver than Quintus? 18. Are Quintus' soldiers much braver than Marcus'? 19. The rivers which you crossed are not many feet deeper than those that we saw, are they? 20. Soon the same generals will return with more soldiers than what (those whom) we have.

LESSON XV

REVIEW

EXERCISE XV

The Helvetii intend to march for many miles through our Province. This has been announced to Caesar by scouts, who inform him about everything that goes on among the Gauls. Accordingly he hurries by forced marches into Farther Gaul, and arrives at Geneva, a town which (which town) is distant more than five hundred miles from the City. He makes requisition on the Province for as many soldiers as possible.[1] There is in

[1] G. 303. Remark 1. A. 291. c. B. 230. 1, 2; B. 228. 1, a)–c). H. 159. 2. HB. 241. 4. T. 117.

Digitized by Google

Gaul one legion in all, to which the Gallic troops will form an auxiliary force (be for an aid). Soon the Helvetii are informed of (about) his arrival. The noblest [men] of the state are sent to him by these as ambassadors. Those who occupy the chief position on (of) this embassy speak to Caesar as follows (say the following to Caesar): "It is our purpose (we intend) to pass (make a journey) through the Province without any hostile-act, because we have no other route." Caesar, however, remembers the wrongs which in earlier years the Helvetii have done to the Romans; for the consul Lucius Cassius[1] was killed in Gaul, and at the same time his army was routed and sent under the yoke by the Helvetii. What, then, does he tell them in reply (reply to them)? "No concession is made you (to you it is not conceded)," he says.[2] "The Helvetii are men of hostile spirit, who never abstain from (ab) wrong and outrage. You are not like those Gauls who have been called by the Senate friends of the Roman people, because they have always been a help to us in danger."

LESSON XVI

PARTITIVE GENITIVE

1. **Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole)**: G. 367; 368; 369 and Remark 1; 370 and Remark 2; 371 and Remarks 1, 2; 372 and Remark 2. A. 346. a, 1–4, c–e. B. 201. 1, a, b, 2, a, b; 355. 2. H. 440. 5; 441; 442. 2, 4; 443; 444. 1. HB. 346. a, b, c, e. T. 47–53.

2. ***Alius* and *Alter*:** G. 319. A. 315 and a–c. B. 253. 1, 2, 3. H. 516 and 1. HB. 265; 279. 1–3. T. Vocabulary.

3. **Superlatives denoting Order and Sequence**: G. 291. Remark 2. A. 293. B. 241. 1. H. 497. 4. HB. 244. T. 113.

[1] In the appositive construction, proper names should precede.

[2] *He says*, **inquit**; placed after one or more words of the quotation.

Digitized by Google

HINTS

Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole). In general this construction, from its similarity to English, offers few difficulties. It will, however, be necessary to make a careful study of the grammar, in order to discover and learn certain words which are followed by a genitive in Latin contrary to the English usage, such as

nihil bonī, *no good*,

and the like.

With regard to numerals, it will be best to use the ablative with **ex** or **dē** after **ūnus**, **duo**, and **trēs**, even though the grammar allows the genitive. This construction should also be used with **quīdam**.

The use with **quisque** and **uterque**, and with such adjectives as **medius**, **reliquus**, **summus**, and **extrēmus**, should be carefully learned.

It should be remembered that the *plural* of **mille** is followed by a genitive in Latin, although no hint of this is given by the form of the English; thus, while *a thousand soldiers* is **mille mīlitēs**, *two thousand soldiers* is **duo mīlia mīlitum** (literally, *two thousands of soldiers*).

EXERCISE XVI

1. Part of this town has natural defences (is fortified by the nature of the place). 2. Many of the Gauls were braver than some of the Romans. 3. At this time (idiom: see Vocabulary) certain of these used-to-come into the Romans' camp. 4. A great shout is raised by the soldiers, some of whom (of whom some) approve one scheme, others another. 5. Caesar had a great contest with Pompey; one view suited one, another (the other) the other; each of

Digitized by Google

the [two] generals possessed[1] the greatest courage. 6. Both of them had (in both of them there was) enough judgment (gen.); nor did Caesar possess more courage (gen.) than [did] Pompey. 7. Some sought safety in one direction, others in another. 8. Each of the Roman leaders had more soldiers than [did] all [of][2] the other chiefs. 9. One of the soldiers scaled the top of the wall [all] alone; no one had more daring (see Sentence 6) than he. 10. The way through the heart (midst) of the city to the ends of the ditches is (of) six miles.

11. What plan (gen.) has been formed by those whom you have left in winter-quarters? 12. Among all these there will be some place (something of place) for me (dat.). 13. For a little distance the tract which was between us and the enemy was obscured by trees. 14. From the top of this tree spring branches of incredible size. 15. How many of the trees did all [of][2] Caesar's soldiers cut down? 16. None of all the deeds (**rēs**) which you have done (**gērō**), Marcus, was braver than this. 17. They left us no time (nothing of space) for flight. 18. None of the sons is more like his father than Marcus. 19. Many of the enemy were seen at that time; some on the top of a hill, others near the banks of the river. 20. Which of these [two] is the braver? Both of the men are very brave, but one of them is a little bolder than the other.

[1] Do not use either **habeō** or the dative of possessor to express the possession of a quality; see Sentence 6 of this Exercise, and Sentence 6 of Exercise XIII.

[2] Why not genitive?

Digitized by Google

LESSON XVII

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES AND VERBS

1. **Genitive with Adjectives**: G. 374. A. 349. a. B. 204. H. 450; 451. 1, 2. HB. 347; 354. T. 58.

2. **Genitive with Verbs**: G. 376; 377; 378; 381. A. 350. a, b, d; 352; 354. a, b; 355. B. 205; 206. 1, a, b, 2, a; 208. 1, 2, a, b; 209. 1, 2; 210, 211. 1, a. H. 449; 454. 1; 455; 456; 457. HB. 342; 343; 345; 350; 352. 1, 2. T. 59–61; 63.

HINTS

Genitive with Adjectives. Notice that where English says *skilled* IN, *sharer* IN, the Latin has *skilled* OF, *sharer* OF. This genitive is not partitive, but objective; a sharer is not part of that which he shares, nor a skilful person of that with which his skill is exercised.

Genitive with Verbs. *a.* The perfect of **meminī** has the force of a present, the pluperfect of a perfect, the future perfect of a simple future.

b. Sentences containing the impersonals **paenitet, pudet,** etc., may be written according to the following models:

I repent of this = it repents me of this,	**Hūius mē paenitet.**
The soldiers were ashamed of their cowardice = it shamed the soldiers of their cowardice,	**Mīlitēs īgnāviae pudēbat.**

c. Master the peculiar construction with the impersonals **interest** and **rēfert.** It is both important and easily forgotten.

EXERCISE XVII

1. Who was more experienced in war than Caesar? 2. I have not forgotten all the kindnesses which I have received from you. 3. All these tribes were very eager

Digitized by Google

for war. 4. I have been accused of many crimes, not even one of which[1] I have committed. 5. You will never repent of this kindness which you have shown (given) me to-day. 6. What is to the interest of Caesar? of you? of us? of our friends? 7. I always remember this: he is inexperienced in all the matters with which you are thoroughly (express by superlative) familiar. 8. You haven't forgotten the oath, have you, which you were given by all of us? 9. The sharers in this crime have been called brave by some. 10. I am not only tired of this work, but I am also very much ashamed of it.

11. I am ashamed of the suspicions which I used to have about you. 12. Have you forgotten the plans which all of us formed? 13. Every one who has conspired will soon be ashamed of the war which he will then be waging against us. 14. We shall return home; not even the one (**is**) who has been longest away forgets his home. 15. Not only has all hope of flight been taken away (abolished), but we have forgotten the way by which we came here. 16. The magistrates did not repent of this—that (**quod**) they had condemned him to death. 17. Not even then did I lose (lay down) the memory of the wrongs which you had done (brought against) the Roman people. 18. I am keeping in mind (memory) all the things which you, Marcus, have forgotten. 19. That man will never be pardoned who has wronged those who were desirous of friendship with him (gen. of **ipse**). 20. Many find matters irksome with which they are not familiar.

[1] The relative should be the first word in its clause.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XVIII

SEPARATION. SOURCE. MATERIAL. REVIEW OF PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

1. **Place Whence. Separation**: G. 390. 1, 2, 3, Remark; 391 and Remark 1. A. 401–402. a; 426. 1; 427. 1; 428. a, e. B. 214. 1, a, b, c, d, 2, 3; 229. 1, a, b, 2. H. 462. 1–4; 463; 464. 1, 2; 465. 1. HB. 408. 1, a, 2, a, 3; 409; 410; 411. a; 412; 451 and a. T. 65; 66; 96; 97.

2. **Source and Material**: G. 395; 396. A. 403. 1, 2, a, Note 1, d. B. 215. 1; 218. 4; H. 467; 469. 1, 2; 470. 1. HB. 406. 4; 413. a, b. T. 67.

3. Review the references for the Accusative of Limit (Lesson VI), Place Where, and Accusative of Extent (Lesson XII).

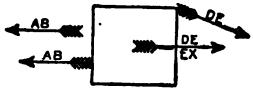
HINTS

Of; From. Remember that when *of* denotes separation, the ablative and not the genitive must be used. Thus,

He was robbed of all his money, **Omnī pecūniā spoliātus est.**

Remember also that *from* often denotes cause. See Sentence 7 of the following exercise.

Prepositions. In addition to the general directions to be found in the grammars, the Vocabulary will afford some help regarding the use or omission of **ab**, **dē**, **ex**, with words denoting separation, etc. The accompanying diagram will suggest the primary meanings of these prepositions. For complete information consult a Latin dictionary.



Compare the diagram in Lesson VI.

Material. The grammars are not all equally clear on this construction. The following is a safe rule to follow in writing Latin.

Digitized by Google

The material — the actual "stuff" out of which something is made — is denoted

(*a*) by the ablative with **ex**, with or without some form of **fīō**:

1. *chains of gold*, **catēnae ex aurō**;
2. *chains made of gold*, **catēnae ex aurō factae**;

(*b*) by an adjective:

golden chains, *chains of gold*, } **aureae catēnae.**

The genitive may be used to show that of which something is composed or consists, when the word which it limits denotes *quantity*, and the idea of quantity is important; as,

a host of cavalry, **multitūdō equitum.**

EXERCISE XVIII

1. The wall was stripped of its defenders by those who had set out from Rome for Athens. 2. Do you not pity those who have been deprived of liberty by the king? 3. The Belgae are descended (perf.)[1] from the Germans. 4. The spears were made[1] of iron. 5. Where have you come from (*where . . . from = whence*)? From a town which is in Gaul, whose women and children I have robbed of their liberty. 6. Where are you going (whither. . . setting out)? Home: yesterday I went from home to the country; to-morrow I shall be at home again. 7. The Helvetii will go out from their borders into the Province; they will not give up (desist from) their purpose from fear of the Romans; they will rob their neighbors of their lands. 8. To-day Caesar will leave Italy with all his forces and set out for Gaul. 9. They lacked everything which was (pl.) useful for navigation. 10. We shall

[1] The perfect passive participle is here an adjective, as in **Gallia est dīvīsa.**

Digitized by Google

not be robbed of those things which we are already without.

11. We have returned home from the country. 12. This forest extends from the banks of the Rhine to the [country of] the Nervii. 13. From the beginning of this speech almost to the end we heard nothing. 14. The soldiers' spears were iron and their badges silver. 15. They were stripped of their silver badges by the enemy. 16. The whole chain was made of silver. 17. They gathered here (hither) from every side — from Rome, from Athens, some even from the most distant regions. 18. Where (whence) did you get that (**iste**) [thing] that you are wearing on your head? 19. In these regions were mountains of great height, which had been almost entirely denuded of trees. 20. Those tribes will not refrain from wrong and outrage.

LESSON XIX

OPUS AND ŪSUS. DIGNUS AND INDIGNUS. ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS. INFINITIVE

1. **Ablative with *Opus* and *Ūsus*:** G. 406. A. 411. B. 218. 2, a, b. H. 477. III and Note. HB. 430. T. 74.

2. **Ablative with *Dignus* and *Indignus*:** G. 397. Remark. 2 A. 418. b. B. 226. 2. H. 481. HB. 442. T. 83.

3. **Ablative with Deponents:** G. 407. A. 410. B. 218. 1. H. 477 I. HB. 429. T. 73.

4. **Infinitive as Object (Complementary):** G. 423. 1, 2. A. 456 and Note. B. 328. 1, 2. H. 607. 1, 2. HB. 586. a; 587; 588. T. 254.

HINTS

Opus est. With **opus est**, *there is need*, the person needing is put in the Dative of the Possessor; thus,

I need your help, **Mihi auxiliō tuō opus est.**

Digitized by Google

Infinitive. The uses of the Latin infinitive are much fewer than those of the English infinitive. Mark very sharply those cases — like the ones found in this lesson — where the infinitive in English can be rendered by the infinitive in Latin. Subsequently your attention will be called to instances where the Latin requires some other construction. This will generally be the case when the English infinitive has the construction of an adjective; as,

A charge **to keep** *I have* (modifies *charge*),

or an adverb; as,

I come **to bury** *Caesar* (modifies *come*).

Noun constructions of the infinitive will often correspond in the two languages, although there are important exceptions.

Do not forget that in English *to* is not essential to the infinitive after certain auxiliaries; thus,

I could not bear it = I was not able **to** *bear it.*

EXERCISE XIX

1. Formerly I used to long-for many things that I did not need. 2. I wish to be worthy[1] of my friends. 3. Caesar could not use his horsemen daily. 4. The Helvetii were preparing to go out from their country. 5. You ought not to cross this river and march into the province. 6. Do you dare to journey into that land, where you will lack many things which you will need? 7. We cannot engage (contend) in daily battles. 8. Caesar commanded his soldiers to make an attack upon the enemy and take possession of their towns. 9. The women and children

[1] Agrees with the subject of the verb which is followed by the complementary infinitive.

Digitized by Google

were compelled to return into the town from which they had come out. 10. Why do you hesitate to do that which you have always wished to do?

11. What shall you try to do in that land to which (whither) you are now hastening to go? 12. Those with whom we spoke did not dare to resist us. 13. They had not begun to fortify the camp, because they lacked many [of the] things which they needed. 14. The lieutenant will soon begin to select a place for the camp. 15. We wish to enjoy all advantages [together] with him to whose friendship we have devoted ourselves. 16. Those who inhabited the town which he had taken surrendered themselves and all their [possessions] to him. 17. Are you not afraid to cross the sea, where for many days you will not be able to see land? 18. We are unwilling to contend with those for whom we are not a match. 19. Shall you be able to perform the same service as (which) he used to? 20. What need have you of a chain made of gold?

LESSON XX

REVIEW

EXERCISE XX

Part of Gaul slopes towards the north. Some of the Gauls are descended from the Germans; of others the origin is unknown. Those who extend from the most remote boundaries of Gaul (the Gauls) to the lower part of the river Rhine are called Belgae; they (use the rel.) face the northeast (look between the north and the east). Their borders also reach to the boundaries of the Germans.

The Romans will ever remember those wars which Caesar waged against the Gauls and Germans. In proportion to the host of the Gauls the Romans were few; but

Digitized by Google

they were much more experienced in war than the former. And so they were unable to become masters of the Province, of which they wished to deprive the Romans. For they could not withstand the onslaught of the Romans, who had spears made of iron, and who, from towers of great height, shot missiles whereby (by which) the enemy's walls were stripped of soldiers; for which reason the enemy were frequently not ashamed to run away. The Gauls wanted to cut the Romans off from [their] supplies, but some from one quarter (part), others from another brought Caesar the (those) things of which he had need. For Gaul extends for many miles, and no one (nor any one) could check the movements of the Romans.

Caesar lingered in Gaul for several years; he deprived the Gauls of many towns; some nobles whom he thought worthy of his friendship he took with him on the march. These at times were of great service (were for a great help) to Caesar.

LESSON XXI

PURPOSE. RESULT. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FEAR

1. **Clauses of Purpose (Final Clauses)**: G. 545; 546. 1, 2; 630. A. 529–531; 563. a, e. B. 282. 1, d, 2; 295. 1, a, 2, 4, 5, a. H. 568. 2, 6; 564. I–III; 565. 3; 590. HB. 502. 2, a, b, 3, a); 510. 2; 530. 2. T. 156–164; 208.

2. **Substantive Clauses of Fear**: G. 550. 1, 2. A. 564. B. 296. 2, a. H. 567. 1, 2. HB. 502. 4. T. 211.

3. **Clauses of Result (Consecutive Clauses)**: G. 552. 1, 2; 553. 1, 3, 4. A. 537, 1, a, c; 538. B. 284. 1; 297. 1, 2. H. 570; 571. 1, 2, 3. HB. 513. 4; 517. 3; 519. 3, 4, a); 521. 2, 3, a). T. 165–167; 213.

4. **Sequence of Tenses.** G. 509. 1; 510; 512; 513. A. 482. 1, 2; 483; 485. c. B. 267. 1, 2, 3; 268. 1, 6. H. 542; 543; 550. HB. 476. 477; 478 (third example under the Subjunctive). T. 151–153.

Digitized by Google

HINTS

The Subjunctive. Notice that sentences which employ this mood in Latin fall naturally into two classes: (*a*) those in which the translation of the Latin subjunctive requires some auxiliary verb or special idiom in the English, and (*b*) those in which the form of the English does not of itself indicate that the subjunctive is required in Latin.

To (*a*) belong purpose clauses, both adverbial and substantive; thus,

(Adverbial)

The soldiers fought { *that they might conquer* / *in order to conquer* / *to conquer* } *the enemy,*

Mīlitēs pugnāvērunt ut hostīs superārent.

(Substantive)

He persuaded the Helvetii to migrate (Latin, *that they should migrate*) *from their country,* **Helvētiīs persuāsit ut fīnibus suīs exīrent.**

To (*b*) belong most clauses of result; as,

The soldiers fought so bravely that they conquered the enemy,
Mīlitēs tam fortiter pugnāvērunt ut hostīs superāverint.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose. Here is a case where the English infinitive must not be rendered by the Latin infinitive. The old doggerel is easily remembered:

"With *ask, command, advise,* and *strive,*
By **ut** translate the infinitive;
But not so after **iubeō,** nor
Vetō, nor the verb **cōnor.**"

Negatives. It is especially important to remember that since negative clauses of purpose are introduced by **nē,** the

Digitized by Google

English cannot always be literally translated as it can be in negative clauses of result. Compare the following:

RESULT		PURPOSE
that no one . . .	**ut nēmō . . .**	**nē quis . . .** (literally, *lest any one*).
that nothing . . .	**ut nihil . . .**	**nē quid . . .** (literally, *lest anything*).
that never . . .	**ut numquam . . .**	**nē umquam** (literally, *lest ever*).

Quō. Do not forget that purpose clauses containing a comparative are regularly introduced by **quō.** Thus,

He said this, the more easily to escape blame,
Haec dīxit, quō facilius culpam vītāret (literally, *whereby he might more easily escape blame*).

Sequence of Tenses. We are familiar with this in English. For instance, we say

I hope that I may see you,
but *I hoped that I might see you.*

It is easy to master the restrictions which Latin places on the use of the tenses of the subjunctive by observing how they are used in each construction. Thus:

Clauses of purpose use only two tenses — present and imperfect.

Clauses of result use three commonly, — present, imperfect, and perfect, — the last of these without regard to the usual law that it must follow only principal tenses.

Clauses after verbs of fearing use all four.

Further treatment of this subject will be found under the lesson on Indirect Questions.

EXERCISE XXI

1. Orgetorix will lead an army into those states in order to gain royal-power (pl.) for his friends. 2. I am afraid that by his influence they will be prevailed-upon to form a conspiracy. 3. The general commanded (use

Digitized by Google

both **iubeō** and **imperō**) the Gauls to follow him.[1] 4. From this (these things) it results that they cannot move about very widely (*not very* = **minus**). 5. Was he not afraid that they would set fire to the buildings? 6. The cavalry burned so many buildings that the enemy did not dare to return home. 7. I fear that they have not taken enough grain with them. 8. We shall burn all the buildings so that they may not return home. 9. They asked him to give them[1] this opportunity. 10. The general urged his [men] never to retreat (turn [their] backs).

11. Orgetorix brought all his vassals together to-the-same-place, because he feared that the Helvetii would make an attack on him. 12. They fought so fiercely in this place that in a short time all were either wounded or slain. 13. I exhort you to be brave, and not[2] fear the enemy's attack. 14. Our men pursued the enemy so recklessly that some of them fell into an ambuscade. 15. Do you not fear lest you fall into an ambuscade? 16. But I was afraid that the enemy had not fallen into an ambuscade. 17. He is doing this with the (this) intention that the enemy may be taken by a stratagem. 18. Exhausted[3] by their wounds, those who defended the town had begun to fall back. 19. Not yet had the hostages been given which the general had commanded (use both **iubeō** and **imperō**) us to give. 20. I am not afraid to come; much more am I afraid that I cannot come.

[1] The reflexive **sē** is not only used to refer to the subject of the clause in which it stands, but it may also be used in a subordinate clause to refer to the subject of the principal clause, when, as here, the subordinate clause tells the thought or intention of that subject.

[2] *And not* in a negative final clause is **nēve** (also **neu**; the latter never before a vowel or **h**). In other expressions use **neque** or **nec** (before a vowel or **h**, always **neque**).

[3] Agrees with "those."

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXII

INDIRECT QUESTIONS. ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE

1. **Subjunctive in Indirect Questions**: G. 461; 467 and Remark 2. A. 573; 574. B. 300. 1, a, Note b. H. 649. II, 1, 2; 651. 1. HB. 537. b, c, d, 2). T. 228; 243; 244.

2. **Sequence of Tenses, Continued**: G. 511; 514. A. 575 and a. Review references under Lesson XXI for the other grammars.

3. **Accusative and Infinitive**: G. 527; 530 (526; 529 in the larger grammar); 531. A. 579; 580. b; 581; 584. B. 270. 1, a), b), c); 317. a. H. 617–619; 641; 642. HB. 398; 589; 591; 593; 594. T. 217–238; 256; 257.

HINTS

Indirect Questions. English usually employs no auxiliary, such as *should* or *might*, to suggest the subjunctive which is necessary in turning indirect questions into Latin. Sometimes these clauses are confounded by the beginner with relative clauses. Remember that indirect questions (*a*) must be introduced by some interrogative word, and (*b*) are substantive clauses, being either the subject or the object of some verb of the class described in the grammar (rarely appositive). Thus,

Subject: *What you did* | *was seen*,
Quid facerēs | **vīsum est.**

Object: *We saw* | *what you did*,
Vīdimus | **quid facerēs.**

Accusative and Infinitive. Recast on the following plan all sentences introduced by *that* after verbs of declaring, perceiving, etc. — the same sort of verbs as those which may be followed by the indirect question.

He said that he would come = He said himself to be about to come,
Dixit sē ventūrum (esse).

Digitized by Google

Keep **dīxit sē ventūrum** in your mind as an antidote against the common mistake of beginning such sentences **dīxit ut.** Remember that **dīxit *sē* ventūrum** means that A said that he (himself) would come; **dīxit *eum* ventūrum,** that A said that he (some one else) would come. See Footnote 1 to Exercise XXI.

Tenses of the Infinitive. (*a*) Remember that *shall* and *will, should* and *would,* are the usual signs of the future infinitive, as in the above example. (*b*) In a sentence of the form

He said that he was coming,

remember that this regularly indicates that the person concerned said,

"*I am coming,*"

using the present tense. Now, as the tense of the infinitive always coincides in time with the tense used by the speaker *when he spoke,* and has nothing whatever to do with the tense of the verb that introduces the quotation, we must write this with the *present* infinitive; thus,

Dīxit sē venīre.

EXERCISE XXII

1. Do you know for how many miles Gaul extends? 2. Caesar says that the country of the Gauls extended for two hundred and forty miles in length (acc.). 3. He said that they extended a hundred and eighty miles in breadth (acc.). 4. I hope[1] that our state will always be in-good-condition. 5. We will never disclose what the chiefs said in the council. 6. He heard that the state had been aroused to arms on account of this matter. 7. Did you know whom the magistrates had adopted [as] allies? 8. Caesar was informed through scouts that the army had undergone the

Digitized by Google

greatest perils. 9. We were asked by two of the soldiers why we had not come in-light-marching-order. 10. The scouts said that they did not know in what direction (into what part) this river flowed.

11. Do you know what part of Gaul has already been subdued? 12. He said that he was afraid that they should not be able to find fords.[2] 13. Did you think that I should easily persuade the allies to come with us?[2] 14. You didn't think that you could compel me by force, did you? 15. I didn't know why I could not compel you. 16. We did not know for what reason Caesar would not (did not) allow the Helvetii to march through the Province. 17. We hope[1] that we shall either persuade them, or compel them by force. 18. On the fifth day it was reported that the enemy had gone away from that place (thence). 19. I cannot make out who is approaching us. 20. Do you know why this plan does not please the Senate?

[1] **Spērō**, *hope*, is followed by indirect discourse, because it is a verb of feeling.

[2] Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse are in the subjunctive. In Sentences 12 and 13, however, the verbs of the subordinate clauses would be subjunctive in any case, and it is only necessary to observe the sequence of tenses.

LESSON XXIII

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE. ACCUSATIVE SUPINE

1. **Infinitive as Subject**: G. 422. A. 452. 1. B. 327. 1. H. 615. HB. 585. a, b, d; 597. 1, a). T. 253.

2. **Gerund**: G. 425; 426. A. 502. B. 338. 1, 3, 4, 5. H. 624. HB. 611 complete; 612 complete. T. 267; 268.

3. **Gerundive**: G. 427 and Remarks 4 and 5; 428 and Remark 2; 430; 431; 432; 433. A. 503 and a; 504 and b; 506; 507. B. 339. 1, 2, 3, 4. H. 623 and 1; 625; 626. 1, 2; 628; 629; 630; 631. HB. 609; 610; 611. 1, 2, a), b). T. 269–273.

Digitized by Google

4. **Gender of the Infinitive**: G. 20. III; 422. A. 33. B. 15. 3. H. 70. HB. 58. 3.

5. **Accusative Supine**: G. 435. A. 509. B. 340. 1, a. H. 633. HB. 618. T. 275.

HINTS

Verbals in *-ing*. Distinguish between the English present participle, which is an adjective, and the gerund or "infinitive in *-ing*," which is a noun; thus,

Participle: *a bird flying*, **avis volāns.**
Gerund: *the power of flying*, **potestās volandī.**

Infinitive as Subject. The infinitive is used in Latin instead of the gerund as the subject of a verb; thus,

ENGLISH	LATIN
To walk is easy = *(It) is easy to walk* = *Walking is easy,*	**Facile est ambulāre.**

Gerund and Gerundive. It will save confusion and prevent mistakes to remember that the gerundive is usually preferred to the gerund wherever the verb is transitive and its object is expressed, and always after a preposition.

EXERCISE XXIII

The student now has at his command five ways of expressing purpose (final clauses):

(*a*) Subjunctive with **ut** and **nē**.

(*b*) Subjunctive with a relative.

(*c*) **Ad** followed by accusative of gerundive or (if intransitive) gerund.

(*d*) Genitive of gerundive or gerund *followed* by **causā** or **gratiā**, *for the sake of, on account of.*

(*e*) Accusative supine after verbs of motion.

In the following exercise, write all expressions of purpose in as many ways as are indicated by the letters in parentheses following the sentence.

Digitized by Google

1. The Helvetii were very desirous of making-war. 2. Two-days is enough for making these preparations (preparing these things) (*c*). 3. He demanded time (space) for hiring soldiers (*c*). 4. We have not come here to ravage the fields (*a*, *c*, *d*, *e*). 5. It is easy to stop the enemy on account of the defiles. 6. A day was named by the leaders for settling these matters (*c*). 7. Envoys were sent to Caesar from all the states to ask for peace (*a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*). 8. We shall not be able to please Caesar by obeying the Senate. 9. Do you think that you can scare Roman citizens by throwing missiles? 10. In carrying-on this enterprise I thought that I should help my country.

11. Meanwhile the enemy were building (making) ships for the purpose of crossing the river (*a*, *b*, *d*).[1] 12. Is it not better to know much (pl.) than to possess much (pl.)? 13. We went to the Senate at Rome (to Rome) to ask-for aid (*a*, *c*, *d*, *e*). 14. By taking (leading) the carts through the defile one-at-a-time, we shall be able to transport all the baggage to the river before daylight. 15. By placing protecting-forces at intervals, it will be made possible for the redoubts to be protected (be brought to pass that the redoubts may be protected) from the enemy's attack. 16. Those who came unwillingly (unwilling) to the council will nevertheless remain gladly for the sake of hearing your speech (*a*, *d*). 17. We shall be able to make a bridge by connecting nine rafts. 18. We shall construct a wall sixteen feet high (to the height of sixteen feet) from the lake to the mountain, for the purpose of fortifying the town (*a*, *b*, *c*, *d*).[2] 19. Was it not pleasing to you [for] me to obey my father? 20. We shall not be given the chance of marching through the province.

[1] In the relative form, say "with which they might cross," etc.

[2] "With which we may fortify," for (*b*).

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXIV

TRANSLATION OF MUST, OUGHT, AND MAY

1. **Passive Periphrastic Conjugation**: G. 251. 1, 2. A. 158. d, 1; 194. b; (196); 500. 2; 372 (see the last example). B. 115; 337. 8, b), 1). H. 621. 1, 2. HB. 162; 600. 3, a. T. 278.

2. **Dative of the Agent**: G. 355 and Remark. A. 374. a, Note 1. B. 189. 1, a. H. 431 and 1, with the Footnote. HB. 373. 1. T. 31.

HINTS

Must. This is generally expressed by the use of the passive periphrastic conjugation. The English sentence must be recast in the passive form; thus,

ENGLISH	LATIN
I must do these things = *These things are to be done by me,*	**Haec facienda sunt mihi.**

This would also be the translation for

I have to do this.

Notice that when the verb is transitive, the gerundive agrees with the subject of the passive, as **facienda** with **haec** above. When intransitive, the neuter singular is used (impersonal construction); as,

I must go, **Eundum est mihi.**

Ought. This is expressed in two ways: (*a*) by **dēbeō** and the present infinitive; thus,

You ought to go away, **Abīre dēbēs,**

and (*b*) by the impersonal **oportet**, *it behooves, is proper.* When this verb is used, the thing one ought to do is put in the present infinitive with the doer as subject accusative; so that the above sentence would then read,

Digitized by Google

Tē abīre oportet (literally, [*for*] *you to go away is proper*),

tē abīre being the subject of **oportet**; or it may be put in the subjunctive without **ut**; thus,

Abeās oportet (literally, *it is proper you should go away*).

May. When this word denotes *permission* or *freedom to perform* an act, as in

May I go with you?

it may be rendered by the impersonal **licet**, *it is allowed*, in the same constructions as **oportet**, or with the dative and infinitive. Thus the above sentence may be translated:

1. **Licetne mē tēcum īre?** (Literally, *is it permitted* [*for*] *me to go with you?*)
2. **Licetne tēcum eam?** (Literally, *is it permitted I should go with you?*)
3. **Licetne mihi tēcum īre?** (Literally, *is going with you permitted to me?*)

Past Tenses. *I ought to have done this*

is **Hōc mē facere oportuit,**
or **Hōc facere dēbuī,**
(not **Hōc fēcisse debeō**, etc.).

The same principle is followed with other verbs of necessity, obligation, and propriety.

EXERCISE XXIV

1. What may I do? What must I do? What ought I to do? 2. I will tell you both what you are permitted to do and what you ought to do. 3. The missiles must be cast down from the wall into the ditch. 4. I ought not to display to you those things which I have promised to conceal.[1] 5. Caesar said that the fortifications must be

[1] Since *promising* is a kind of *telling*, **polliceor** is followed by indirect discourse. Translate as though it read, "promised that I would conceal."

Digitized by Google

finished before night. 6. We must drive the enemy back by every [possible] means. 7. Did I not do of my own accord everything (pl.) that I ought to have done? 8. You ought to have reported to the general everything that was going on among the Belgae. 9. The enemy could have been driven back from the walls by a rally [on the part] of the soldiers. 10. A supply of grain had to be gathered by those who had been placed in command of the cavalry.

11. We ought to have remained there to cut the enemy off from supplies. 12. About the city had been stationed many towers, which the soldiers had to move up to the walls. 13. You ought not to gain the request (gain that) which you asked of me. 14. Five legions had to be led out from camp and stationed about the town. 15. The soldiers of the seventh legion do not think that the cavalry ought to have pursued the enemy. 16. Those who are afraid of sailing (fear to sail) ought not to go across the sea. 17. We who have defended you with our swords ought not to be called your enemies. 18. Some of the Gauls thought that they ought not to fight with us. 19. Cassius, you ought to have selected a place suitable for a camp. 20. The scouts inform Caesar that the cavalry must be led across the river (acc.) by a bridge.

LESSON XXV

REVIEW

EXERCISE XXV

The Helvetians had to contend with the Romans in a fierce battle. The Romans were victorious, and envoys had not come from the Helvetii to them to beg for peace, but all had hidden themselves in the neighboring woods

Digitized by Google

across a river. The Romans had made a bridge over (**in**) the river, so that they might be able to pursue them. The Helvetii were alarmed by their sudden arrival, and sent envoys to them to treat with them about a peace. The heads of this embassy spoke these words:

"We hope, Caesar, that you will make peace with us. Then we will go to that quarter where you determine[1] and say[1] that we may be, and will remain (be) there. But do you wish still to carry on war with the Helvetii? You ought to forget neither the former (old) disaster which Cassius suffered in this place, nor the ancient valor of the Helvetii. You attacked, it-is-true, one clan unexpectedly; have you not heard that their comrades could not bring them aid? Surely, neither should your own valor be greatly praised on that account, nor ours despised. You will not let this place take its name, will you, from a disaster to (of) the Roman people?"

Then Caesar thought that he must beware, for he feared that some [yet] more serious calamity might befall himself and the army (dat.); wherefore he replied that he did not know why they had said these things; the Roman people had come to those regions with good intentions, and did not wish to harm the Helvetii (*and . . . not* = **neque**).

LESSON XXVI

COMMANDS. EXHORTATIONS. PROHIBITIONS

1. **Imperative**: G. 266; 267; 268. 1, 2. A. 448. a; 449. 1, 2, a. B. 281. 1, a), b). H. 560. 2, 4. HB. 496, c, d. T. 247.

2. **Hortatory and Jussive Subjunctive**: G. 263. 3. A. 439. Notes 1 and 2, a. B. 274; 275. 1. H. 559. 1, 2. HB. 500; 501. 2, 3. T. 154; 155.

[1] Future perfect, the actual time which the English present here denotes.

Digitized by Google

3. **Prohibitions**: G. 271. 2; 263. 2, (b), 3; 275. A. 450. B. 281. 2; 276. a, b. H. 561. 1. HB. 501. 3, a, 1), 2). T. 248.

HINTS

Remember not to use the imperative mood for prohibitions. For expressing these, **nōlī** and **nōlīte** with the infinitive will be the most useful method.

There will be practically no occasion to employ the future imperative except in the case of certain verbs like **meminī** and **sciō**, where the present form is not in use.

Review in the Grammar the imperative forms of **dīcō**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, and **ferō**, and their compounds.

EXERCISE XXVI

1. Follow, soldiers! 2. Don't follow a man (**is**) who will lead you into slavery. 3. Let the consul decide (judge) which-of-the-two is the more worthy of citizenship. 4. Let them not be led to slavery, for they have deserved well of (**dē**) the Roman people. 5. Caesar, don't lead our children into slavery almost before our eyes (in our sight). 6. Let close friends and kinsmen be believed. 7. Friends, don't waste the fortune which you have received from your father. 8. Take care that no one knows this except close friends and kinsmen. 9. Show me, Gauls, what there is left (gen.) you except the mere land. 10. Lieutenant, attack them [when they are] encumbered.

11. Attack them, soldiers, and cut down as many of them as possible. 12. Put your trust in (trust yourselves to) flight, citizens, and let the women and children hide in the neighboring forests. 13. Let them not look-for help from the Romans. 14. Make up your minds quickly where you must go. 15. Do not think that it happened by accident that they avenged your wrongs. 16. Soldiers,

Digitized by Google

avenge all wrongs, both public and private. 17. Take care to play (be) the man; do not forget your old-time valor. 18. Let all the elders and those who are sick be defended by these twenty. 19. All remain where you have halted. 20. Let him remain here where he stands (has halted).

LESSON XXVII

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

1. **Protasis and Apodosis (Condition and Conclusion):** G. 589–592; 496. 1, 2. A. 512. a, c; 525. a, c. B. 301; 306. 1–4. H. 572; 575. 1–6. HB. 573; 574; 577; 578. 1–3. T. 184–186.

2. **Indicative in Conditional Sentences:** G. 595; 242. Remarks 1, 2. A. 515; 516. 1, a, c, d. B. 302. 1, 3; 261. 2. HB. 575. *A*; 579, a. T. 187; 189; 191; 193.

3. **Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences:** G. 596 and 1; 597. A. 514. B, 2, a, b, C, 1, 2. B. 303–4. H. 576; 577; 579. HB. 580, a; 581. T. 188; 190; 192; 194.

HINTS

In turning a conditional sentence into Latin, we should first make sure whether the supposition is in present, past, or future time. To do this, one must observe *both* condition (protasis) and conclusion (apodosis), because in English the tense of the verb does not always show the time of the sentence. For instance, the protasis "*If I saw*" can refer to present, past, or future suppositions. Thus:

(1) *If I saw him* (yesterday), *I did not* (then) *recognize him.* (Past time.)

(2) *If I saw him* (at this moment), *I should not* (now) *be looking for him.* (Present time.)

(3) *If I saw him* (to-morrow), *I should probably not recognize him* (then). (Future time.)

Digitized by Google

Notice that in each case the form of the conclusion makes the time of the whole sentence clear, even if the words "yesterday," "to-morrow," etc., are omitted.

By adding the words "now," "previously," or "subsequently," to a conditional sentence, and observing which one seems to fit, it is often possible to determine the time of the sentence more readily than by other means. Thus, in the sentence,

If you understood this, I should not be explaining it,

the full thought is clearly,

If you understood this now, *I should not* now *be explaining it.*

Having determined the time, the next step is to find whether one must use the indicative or the subjunctive. This may be done by attention to the formulas here presented.

I. Present Conditions

(*a*) *If this is so, it is fortunate.* (Nothing assumed: takes pres. indic.)

(*b*) *If this were so* (which it is not), *it would be fortunate.* (Supposition assumed to be untrue: takes imperf. subj.)

II. Past Conditions

(*a*) *If this was so, it was fortunate.* (Nothing assumed: takes imperf. or perf. indic.)

(*b*) *If this had been so* (which it was not), *it would have been fortunate.* (Supposition assumed to be untrue: takes pluperf. subj.)

III. Future Conditions

(*a*) *If he* (actually) *comes, all will be glad to see him.* (Assumes the future event as a reality: takes fut. or fut. perf. indic.)

(*b*) *If he should* (by any chance) *come, all would be glad to see him.* (Assumes the future event as a more remote possibility: takes pres. or perf. subj.)

Digitized by Google

Finally, notice how, in the protasis of a future condition, English is apt to use a present tense where Latin employs a future or a future perfect. Thus, English says,

If Caesar **conquers**, *he will spare the captives;*

but Latin would make the protasis,

If Caesar **shall** *conquer*, or
If Caesar **shall have** *conquered*,
Sī Caesar ***superābit*** or ***superāverit***, **captīvīs parcet.**

EXERCISE XXVII

1. If you are well, why do you complain? 2. If you ask him why he is complaining, you will learn something new (part. gen.). 3. If Caesar gave back the hostages, why were the Gauls sorrowful? 4. If they should break (move) camp, should we not follow them? 5. If they were unwilling to begin battle, they would not be standing on the hill-top. 6. If he had sent the cavalry in advance, he would not have fallen into an ambuscade. 7. But if the enemy should follow the column, they would fall into an ambuscade themselves. 8. Had we not been deceived by a stratagem, we should have all returned home safe. 9. Whether fifteen or five hundred of our [men] fell, the disaster was [a] serious [one]. 10. If you advance to dangerous ground, how shall you escape disaster?

11. If the peril is so great that it cannot be avoided, we must make the greatest effort (labor very greatly) not to suffer (come into) extreme torture. 12. If I had not admired your courage, I should not have said even these [words]. 13. Whether the number of the enemy should be great or small, we, at least, should never run away. 14. If I were not at Rome, I should wish to be at Athens.

Digitized by Google

15. If you reach the town in two days, who will not admire you? 16. Unless the fields were being laid waste, we should not be seeking aid even from you. 17. If it pleases you, we will urge the soldiers to make an attack on the enemy. 18. But if it does not please you, we are ready to do that which you shall command. 19. If they have not yet reached the river, there is danger that (**nē**) they may be cut off from supplies by the enemy. 20. If you take us under [your] protection, you will never repent of this kindness.

LESSON XXVIII

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE. CLAUSES OF PROVISO. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES REVIEWED

1. **Optative Subjunctive**: G. 260; 261. A. 441; 442. B. 279. 1, 2. H. 558. 1, 2. HB. 510. a; 511. 1.

2. **Clauses of Proviso**: G. 573. A. 528. B. 310. I, II. H. 587. HB. 529.

HINTS

Notice that in the Optative Subjunctive the tenses refer to the same time as in conditional sentences taking the subjunctive; the present subjunctive referring to future time, the imperfect to present time, and the pluperfect to past time.

EXERCISE XXVIII

1. O that he may not perceive that we are enemies! 2. Provided that he realizes who his friends are, we at least shall not be in danger. 3. If he should perceive what we have done, to-morrow none of us would survive.

Digitized by Google

4. O that he were willing to forget the old disgrace! 5. If he were willing to forget the old disgrace, he would not also be able to lay aside the memory of recent wrongs, would he? 6. Provided that he does not know that we have tried to force a march through the province, we shall easily gain this request from him. 7. Would that the Helvetii had not harassed the Ambarri! 8. Had we not always had the hope of victory, we should not have striven so valiantly with the Germans. 9. May you never experience grief from a change of fortune (plural of **rēs**)! 10. For, so long as you have prosperity, I also shall enjoy your [good] fortune.

11. If the enemy attack our men, their fear of the Gauls will be so great that all will flee (pres. subj.). 12. Would that we might at least enjoy prosperity now-and-then! 13. If they had not struck camp on the next day, they would have fallen into an ambuscade. 14. Would that there were not more than five miles between our van and the enemy's rear-guard! 15. Provided that he pitches camp here, we shall easily be able to crush him. 16. If the crops are ripe in the fields, we are not afraid that we shall be cut off from supplies. 17. If Caesar had not demanded grain from the Aeduans, we should not have been informed about the intention of the rest. 18. O that the Helvetii may not turn their line-of-march away from the river! 19. Provided that they gather the grain into one place within a few days, we shall be able to fortify the camp in the meantime. 20. Would that the grain had already been brought together!

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXIX

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. VERBS OF HOPING AND PROMISING

1. **Use of the Infinitive and of the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse:** G. 648–650. A. 578–580. B. 313; 314. 1. H. 641; 642. HB. 589; 591; 592; 533; 534. T. 228.

2. **Tense of the Infinitive:** G. 530; 531. A. 584. a, b; 569. a. B. 270. 1, a), b), c), 3, a; 317 and a. H. 617–620. HB. 593; 472. a, b, c. T. 230; 238.

3. **Tense of the Subjunctive:** G. 509. 1; 510 and Remark. A. 585; 482. 1, 2; 483; 484 complete; 485. b. B. 267. 1–3; 268. 1, 2; 269. 1, 3. H. 542–545. HB. 476; 477; 481; 483. T. 231; 151; 152.

4. **Use of Pronouns in Indirect Discourse:** G. 520–522. A. 296 and 2; 300. 1, 2, a; 299. a. B. 244. 1, I, II, a, 5. H. 645 and 1. HB. 533. a. T. 237. 3.

5. **Verbs of Hoping and Promising:** G. 423. Remark 5. A. 580. c. B. 331. I. H. 619. 1. HB. 593. a.

HINTS

Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses. The problem is in most cases a very simple one. If the action described occurs AT THE SAME TIME as that of the main verb, use the present or imperfect, according to the sequence; if it occurs BEFORE the time of the main verb, use the perfect or pluperfect, according to the sequence. The principle involved in cases where the action occurs at a later time than that of the main verb is treated in Lesson XXXVII.

Verbs of Hoping and Promising. Since promising is a kind of telling, and hoping an action of the mind, it is easy to see why verbs meaning "to hope" and "to promise" are regularly followed by the construction of indirect discourse. And since hopes and promises are concerned

Digitized by Google

only with the future, it is also evident why the future is the tense of the infinitive to be used with such verbs.

EXERCISE XXIX

1. Caesar said that he had called the chiefs together, and that he had a great number of them (of whom he had a great number) in camp. 2. In the meantime, he had promised a certain friend to appoint him lieutenant. 3. Do you know that the day is at hand which has been agreed upon by Caesar with the ambassadors? 4. I hope that he will not reproach us severely. 5. He says that this magistrate possesses a power over (express by **in** and acc.) his [subjects], which is very great. 6. He promised to go to that town to buy grain. 7. He said that the enemy, who had been seen on the top of a hill on the day before, were now near. 8. They thought that Caesar would be influenced by their prayers to undertake the war. 9. Then at last they promised to give the hostages which he demanded. 10. They said that they, at least, hoped to retain the power which they had already held for many years.

11. He said that all must endure the domination of the Roman people. 12. Do you understand how important the war is which they are waging? 13. Caesar says that then-and-only-then was Liscus persuaded to reveal to him what he had before concealed. 14. I heard that Caesar had dismissed the council that he might talk with Liscus alone. 15. He found that the (those) things which Liscus had said in the meeting were true. 16. He hopes to lease all the taxes for a small price. 17. Do you expect that your personal property will be increased by this means? 18. Caesar has written that the German boys (boys of the Germans), who were very bold, did nothing against their

Digitized by Google

will. 19. He says that Dumnorix, who was chief of the Aeduans, was very powerful among the neighboring states also. 20. The mother promised to restore her son to his old position of popularity.

LESSON XXX

REVIEW

EXERCISE XXX

Dumnorix was a chief of the Aedui who hoped to attain to the highest office among his [people], an office which (which office) his brother Diviciacus held at the time (then). Caesar said that this man favored the Helvetii because he had a wife from that tribe. And so Caesar summoned Diviciacus, and showed him what each one had said privately, in his own presence, about his brother. Then Diviciacus said, "Do not, I beseech you, take any especially severe measures (decide anything more severe) against my brother! For if you provide for his punishment, I am afraid that all the Aedui will believe that it was done with my consent. You are a man of uncommon justice: O that you would hear my entreaties! I know, it-is-true, that in the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish he was the one responsible for the retreat (the beginning of the flight was made by him); but if you will talk with him, I hope that you will persuade him to be friendly to the Roman people for-the-future, and not make any attempt (attempt anything) contrary to your will."

This was the end of Diviciacus' speech, and he embraced Caesar with many tears. But he (**ille**) said, "I will summon your brother and tell him what I object to in his conduct

Digitized by Google

(in him). Provided that he remains loyal for the future, your favor with me will not be lessened. But if he is moved neither by brotherly affection nor by the words of the populace, let him beware lest he be deprived of his life."

Then Diviciacus promised that he would compel his brother to obey Caesar. He wept: again he entreated that Caesar would spare his brother; and Caesar answered him (use rel.) that he had already pardoned him, and that he would not provide for his punishment.

LESSON XXXI

PARTICIPLES. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. **Tense of the Participle**: G. 276; 282. Remark; 283. A. 158. a, b, c, 1, 2, Note; 491., B. 336. 1–5; 337. 4. H. 640 complete. HB. 599. a–c; 600. 1, 4. T. 261–263.

2. **Ablative Absolute**: G. 409; 410. Remarks. A. 419 and a; 489; 492; 493. 1, 2. B. 227. 1, 4. H. 489. 1, 3, 5. HB. 421 complete. T. 87; 88.

3. **Participles Equivalent to Clauses**: G. 664. Remark 1; 665–667. A. 496; 497. B. 227. 2, a)–f), 5. H. 638. 1, 2. HB. 604. 1–7. T. 264.

HINTS

Tense of the Participle. In the English sentence

Laelius, returning to Rome, learned that his house had burned down,

the present participle *returning* may mean that the news came to him either while returning or after returning.

Latin is more precise. If we mean *while* returning, we must use the present participle. Thus,

Laelius, Rōmam *revertēns*, domum suam dēflagrāsse certior factus est.

Digitized by Google

If, however, we mean *after* returning, the perfect participle must be used. Thus,

Laelius, Rōmam *reversus*, etc.

The Ablative Absolute. The verb **revertor** being deponent, the perfect participle **reversus** has an active meaning, *having returned*, and therefore naturally agrees with **Laelius.** Suppose, however, we had wished to turn into Latin the sentence

Caesar, having received the hostages, withdrew his troops.

Since Latin has no perfect *active* participle, except in the case of deponent verbs, we cannot translate *having received* literally. We must therefore change the participial clause to the passive. Thus,

Caesar, hostages having been received, withdrew his troops.

Translating the nominative absolute of the English by the Latin ablative absolute, we have

Caesar *obsidibus acceptīs* copiās dēdūxit.

From this it appears that the ablative absolute construction is in part a makeshift, enabling one to employ a participle in the *tense* desired, even when it cannot agree with the subject or object of the main verb.

The converse is also true, that we must never use the ablative absolute when the participle can be made to agree with subject or object. Thus, if we have

Caesar, having withdrawn his troops, halted them on a hill,

we must recast the sentence in the form

Caesar halted his withdrawn troops on a hill,
Caesar cōpiās *dēductās* in colle cōnstituit.

Had we used the ablative absolute,

Caesar cōpiīs dēductīs *eōs* in colle cōnstituit,

Digitized by Google

it would have meant

Caesar, having withdrawn his troops, halted **them** (*i.e.* not the troops, but some *other* persons of whom mention had just been made) *on a hill.*

To summarize directions, in translating English participles into Latin, first be sure of the precise TIME indicated by the participle (either at the same time as the main verb or before it), then be sure that the Latin participle agrees with the proper word. A rigid, literal re-rendering of your Latin will be the surest test.

EXERCISE XXXI

1. Caesar, having harangued his men, joined battle. 2. The army returned home, having lost three hundred [men]. 3. All cast themselves weeping at Caesar's feet. 4. The Helvetians, who had retreated to a mountain, on beholding this began to press forward. 5. The mountain having been taken and our men going up, some of the enemy tried to surround them on [**ab**] the unprotected flank. 6. The Helvetii, influenced by their lack of everything, sent envoys to him [to arrange] about [making] a surrender. 7. After one night had intervened (one night having intervened), about six thousand panic-stricken men hastened towards the Rhine. 8. At the request of the Aedui (the Aedui requesting), he took the Boii under his protection. 9. When this war was ended,* Caesar set out for Italy. 10. As he was setting out for Italy, some one said to him (to him setting out some one said) that he would never return.

* In this and subsequent exercises, clauses which are intended to be put in the Ablative Absolute or other participial construction are marked, as here, with an asterisk following the expression, except in those cases where the fitness of these constructions is obvious from the form of the sentence or from the explanations in parentheses.

Digitized by Google

11. After sending all their horses out of sight (the horses of all having been removed from sight), he gave the signal for battle (gen.) to his men, who were eager [for the fray] (gave . . . to the eager [ones]). 12. Caesar said that in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso,* Orgetorix, influenced by his longing for kingly power, formed [made] a conspiracy of the nobility. 13. [After] having invited his brother in, he summoned Dumnorix. 14. Can you see who is coming here at full gallop? 15. [After] drawing up a triple line of battle in front of the camp, Caesar awaited the arrival of the enemy. 16. On the following day, as our men were returning,* about fourteen horsemen belonging to the enemy were seen by scouts on the farther bank of the river. 17. When three-days had passed,* the ambassadors returned. 18. Our men, [after] encountering the enemy's cavalry on the march and chasing them for many miles, killed some of them. 19. Our men, having pursued too eagerly, joined battle with the cavalry of the Helvetii on unfavorable ground. 20. Pursuing [them as they were] attempting to cross, they slew a great part of them with swords, [as they were] encumbered in the river.

LESSON XXXII

CUM TEMPORAL. UBI. POSTQUAM. SIMUL ATQUE

1. ***Cum* Temporal**: G. 579 complete; 580; 581; 584; 585; 588; 242 and Remarks. A. 545. Note 1, a; 546. Notes 1–3, a; 547. B. 288. 1–3; 289 and a; 290. 1, 2. H. 597; 600. I, 1, II, 1; 601. 1. 2, 4. HB. 521. 1, b, c; 524; 540 and a; 550 and a. T. 182; 183.

2. ***Ubi; Postquam; Simul atque:*** G. 561. A. 543 and a. B. 287. 1–3. H. 602. 1, 2. HB. 550; 557 and a. T. 176.

Digitized by Google

HINTS

***Cum* Temporal.** The indicative with **cum** is chiefly used for the purpose of emphasizing the fact that two actions occurred at identically the same time. When the important idea is, not that the actions were simultaneous, but that the situation described in the **cum**-clause formed the *circumstances* under which the action of the main clause occurred, then (of past events) we shall have **cum** with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive; and to this class belong the majority of **cum**-clauses which the pupil is likely to use.

Future Time. Cum, like **sī**, when referring to the future, takes a future or future perfect indicative, where English prefers the present or perfect. Thus,

(*a*) *When you go away, I shall not forget you,*
Cum *abībis*, tuī nōn oblīviscar.

(*b*) *When Caesar has conquered the Gauls, let him celebrate a triumph.*
Caesar cum Gallōs *superāverit*, triumphet.

EXERCISE XXXII

1. When the enemy had been informed of Caesar's arrival, they took up their position at the foot of a mountain. 2. After the scouts had brought back word that the fortifications of the town were eight miles in circumference, he decided that he must make haste. 3. As soon as the military experts (those who were skilled in the military art) (**rēs**) learned this, they directed all the forces to be led up to the nearest hill. 4. To these they return whenever they are in danger. 5. The moment that he was able, he hurried into Italy to hold the assizes. 6. When they stand on dry ground, they will make a rush at the

Digitized by Google

enemy. 7. The Britons call [it] a town whenever they have fortified their woods with a palisade and ditch. 8. When Caesar came into Gaul, the leaders of one party (part) were the Aedui; of the other, the Sequani. 9. This happened within the memory of our fathers, at-a-time-when the army seemed to have deserved no (not) less praise than the commander himself. 10. While (**cum**) the officials were trying to capture Orgetorix, they heard that he was dead.

11. As soon as he found from the prisoners that the enemy had [it] in mind to make an attack, he led the soldiers back into camp. 12. When Caesar had gone nearer to the enemy (acc.), they (**ille**) sent envoys to him to make peace (about peace). 13. But as soon as he found that they could not be deterred from their settled purpose, he dismissed the council. 14. Afterwards, however, when they had got over their alarm, they said that they had not been willing to do this. 15. When he could not persuade this man by his own efforts, he tried to gain his point through a certain Gaul, who was very influential on account of his popularity. 16. When he asked (plup.) these for what reason they had come to him, he made the following discovery (found out thus). 17. The moment that the legions reached the river, a shout went up from (having been raised by) the horsemen,* [and] they perceived that they had fallen into an ambuscade. 18. After the enemy in close array had put the cavalry to flight, they tried to hurl back the phalanx also. 19. As soon as he perceived that he was worthy of death, he flung himself headlong into the river. 20. When they perceive that our men have already started, they will face about (abl. abs.) [and] hurry after (**ad**) them.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXXIII

CUM CAUSAL. QUOD. QUONIAM

1. ***Cum* Causal:** G. 586. A. 549. B. 286. 2. H. 598. HB. 526. T. 172.

2. ***Quod* and *Quoniam*:** G. 540–542; 525. 1–3; 610. A. 540. 1, 2, Notes; 572. a, b. B. 286. 1, b, c; 299 complete; 331. V, a. H. 588. I, II, 2, 3, Note, 4. HB. 552. 1, 2; 555. T. 170.

HINTS

With **cum** causal, the reason is regarded as being the circumstances under which the main action occurs; with **quod** causal, the reason is given simply as a fact; with **quoniam**, its truth is assumed to be admitted by the person addressed.

EXERCISE XXXIII

1. Since the enemy had hidden themselves in the woods, their number could not be ascertained. 2. Because I answered the envoys graciously, did you think that I should take them under my protection? 3. Inasmuch as this [is the] gratitude you have shown me, [namely], that you do not think you ought to discuss (speak about) [our] common interests, these are the things which I demand of you (these are what, etc.). 4. Since these-things (which) are so, after drawing up a triple line of battle* in front of the camp, I shall wait until the enemy give (make) me a chance at them (of themselves). 5. As for the fact that you have felt sure that you could gain possession of Gaul by a single (one) battle, beware lest you deceive yourself. 6. But if you return from Gaul to Rome, we shall be useful friends to you.

Digitized by Google

7. There was the additional circumstance that the Romans lacked both cavalry and ships. 8. Inasmuch as the Aedui have risked the fortune of war, and had an armed encounter* (encountered with arms) and been beaten, they must give me hostages. 9. Since you cannot bear this with an untroubled mind, why do you not prepare for war? 10. Caesar thought that he ought not to do this, both (at the same time) because he did not wish to expose himself to wild and barbarous men, and [because] he was afraid that he might be cut off from supplies.

11. Because Caesar was not following the enemy at the interval at which he was accustomed [to follow them], some thought that the Romans had diverted their line of march away from them. 12. Since the enemy saw that the entire mountain was filled with men, they formed a phalanx,* [and] made a rush at the exposed flank. 13. Since he could not keep the cavalry from fighting (**pugna**), he commanded the line of battle to advance. 14. Next, because their left hands were encumbered for [**ad**] fighting (see sentence 13) by their shields, after tossing their arms about for a long while* they let these go from their hands. 15. When the battle had raged (it had been fought) for a long while in a twofold conflict, they retreated to their camp, because they could not get the upper hand. 16. Since you are spent with age, you ought no longer to be eager for war (gen. of ger. of **bellāre**). 17. Inasmuch as we cannot conquer, we must strive-to-reach [a place of] safety. 18. Because he would (did) not give them the opportunity of sending envoys to the Ubii, all will return home. 19. There was the added fact that he was very powerful among his own [people]. 20. It happened that they fell into an ambuscade.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXXIV

CUM CONCESSIVE. ETSI AND TAMETSI

1. ***Cum* Concessive**: G. 587. A. 549. B. 309. 3. H. 598. HB. 526. T. 199.

2. ***Etsi* and *Tametsi***. G. 604. A. 527. c. B. 309. 2 and a. H. 585. HB. 582. 8. T. 198.

HINTS

***Cum* Concessive (Adversative).** As **cum** temporal, when followed by the subjunctive, gives the circumstances which mark the *time* of an action, and **cum** causal the circumstances which are the *cause* of an action, so **cum** concessive gives circumstances *in spite of which* the action occurs. The context alone determines which meaning **cum** shall receive. Similarly in English, the temporal conjunction *when* can take on both causal and concessive meanings. Thus,

(Temporal) *I could not refuse, when I was asked to come.*
(Causal) *I could not refuse, when they seemed so anxious that I should come.* (When = since.)
(Concessive) *I stayed at home, when I ought to have gone out.* (When = although.)

EXERCISE XXXIV

1. Although he is very powerful, he never helps me. 2. Although he saw that a battle would be free from (without) risk, nevertheless he kept the army in camp on that day. 3. Since they were deserted by their leader, they rested all their hope of safety on courage. 4. Although they had not surrendered (come into surrender), nevertheless Caesar pardoned them. 5. Although they observed these things, nevertheless they suppliantly begged for peace

Digitized by Google

with-tears (weeping). 6. Although he had demanded hostages, nevertheless he did not expect that they would give them. 7. Although he did not think that he ought to fear any longer after the arms had been handed over,* yet he kept the soldiers in camp. 8. Although the place whence the Helvetii had departed was unoccupied, he was unwilling to go back there without an army. 9. Since the reckoning had been made by name, it was easy to ascertain how many had departed from home. 10. When sixty of them had been killed, he sent-for the rest.

11. Although a hundred horsemen had been seen near the river, nevertheless he did not even make an attack on them. 12. Although they could have fought without risk, yet all fled by night. 13. Although it was already midsummer, yet he prolonged the war from day to day. 14. Since he judged the position to be advantageous, he determined to remain there. 15. Since the Helvetii had left home while their affairs were most prosperous (abl. abs.), Caesar upbraided them severely. 16. When he had been informed of this fact through scouts, he hastened to the town by forced marches. 17. On learning of these facts,* since he was unwilling to begin battle, he led his army back into camp. 18. Although the utmost difficulty [in the way] of building a bridge was presented, nevertheless he determined to complete the work. 19. When he had come to the river, the enemy had all gone across. 20. When you have crossed the Rhine (fut. perf.), we shall (come into) surrender.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXXV

REVIEW

EXERCISE XXXV

When the Germans had come to Gaul, having been sent for by the Sequani, ambassadors from (of) the Aedui came to Caesar, and (who) spoke as follows:

"We thank you, Caesar, because you granted us permission (granted that it should be permitted to us) to have this conference with you. And we beseech you that you will give us aid, agreeably to your custom. For, inasmuch as we enjoy (use) the hospitality and friendship of the Roman people, we ought not to be permanently under the sway of the Germans. For [it was] on this account [that] we fled from our state — that we feared slavery to (of) the Germans. For if liberty is taken away,* what hope is there left in life for human beings? Moreover, how can the Germans' manner of life be compared with [that] of the Gauls? Besides, since Ariovistus uses-his-power (commands) arrogantly and visits all [manner of] tortures on us, if anything is not done (perf.) at his beck, we prefer to experience whatever lot may befall us (whatever fortune may befall (subj.), we prefer to experience [it]) rather-than to endure his behests [any] longer. For he is so barbarous that if these [words] should be disclosed to him, he would wreak vengeance (inflict punishment) on all the hostages, a great number of whom he has demanded from the states."

Although Caesar was afraid that he might encounter a greater war, nevertheless he decided that it ought not to be allowed that friends of the Roman people should be

Digitized by Google

robbed of their liberty by barbarians. And so, as soon as he was able, he invited King Ariovistus to a conference. He (**ille**), however, objected to coming (inf.) to the conference, since he thought that Caesar ought not to dictate to him how he should use (subj.) his power. After Caesar had sent envoys to him to make plain what business (gen.) the Roman people had in Gaul, he replied that he did not wish to lose the revenue which was being paid by the Aedui. But as soon as he heard this (but . . . this = *which*), Caesar concluded that he must make haste, and the moment that he was able, preparing a grain supply* as rapidly as possible, he hurried towards [the camp of] Ariovistus.

LESSON XXXVI

ANTEQUAM AND PRIUSQUAM. DUM AND QUOAD

1. ***Antequam* and *Priusquam***. G. 574–577. A. 550; 551. c. B. 291; 292. H. 605. I, II, 1. HB. 507. 4, a)–d); 571; 550. b. T. 181.

2. ***Dum* and *Quoad***. G. 568–572. A. 552–556. B. 293. I–III. H. 603; 604. HB. 507. 5; 571; 550. b; 559; 560. T. 177–180.

HINTS

With the conjunctions **antequam** and **priusquam**, and **dum** and **quoad** meaning *until*, the mood to be employed is subjunctive or indicative according as the act described is conceived as anticipated, or as merely occurring. Thus, in

Caesar captured the spies before they could get away,

it is evident that he anticipated the possibility of their escape, and succeeded in preventing it. Therefore we have the subjunctive:

Caesar speculātōrēs comprehendit priusquam effugere *possent*.

Digitized by Google

But in the sentence

I had learned this fact before I reached home,

we have a mere succession of events: the time of the occurrence is the important detail. Therefore we should use the indicative:

Hanc rem cōgnōveram priusquam domum pervēnī.

EXERCISE XXXVI

1. Before the enemy recovered from their fright, Caesar led his army into the [lands of] the Suessiones. 2. While these things were going on in the conference, the enemy, making a sally from the gate,* began to throw stones at our men. 3. I must not wait until more of their cavalry return. 4. If you are assailed, hold out until I myself approach nearer with the army. 5. Before Caesar came to Gaul, the Gauls had thought themselves very powerful. 6. While the arms were being collected, the voices of those could be heard who advised the Gauls not to be obedient to Caesar, but to resist him. 7. Before the rest could be led back, the soldiers stood within the fortifications. 8. So long as the enemy were farther away from the fortification, our men were greatly disconcerted by the shower (multitude) of missiles. 9. In order that time might intervene until the soldiers should come together, he replied that he was going to lead his forces back to Italy gradually. 10. They did not end the pursuit (make an end of pursuing) until they drove the enemy headlong.

11. Before I heard that you were at Rome, I had already sent letters to you at (to) Athens. 12. While each army was waiting until the other should begin to cross (make a beginning of crossing), Caesar sent fifty horsemen to the top of the hill. 13. While our army was being con-

Digitized by Google

centrated, fresh hope came (hope was added) to the enemy in a wonderful way. 14. He had made up his mind that he must not neglect the wrongs of the Aedui, even before they sought aid of him. 15. I will kill them all before they can seek aid from you. 16. Your revenues were already becoming worse, even before I came to Gaul. 17. We shall extend this wall until it connects the mountain with the city. 18. While he lingered for a few days in-the-neighborhood of Geneva, the enemy advanced a hundred miles. 19. For they wished to cut him off from supplies before he could unite with his allies. 20. While the base of the mountain was being encircled with walls, no one attempted to ascend.

LESSON XXXVII

QUIN. QUO MINUS. SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FIRST PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

1. ***Quin* and *Quō minus*:** G. 547; 548. Note 2; 549; 554; 555. 1, 2; 556. A. 558. a, b; 559. B. 283. 4; 284. 3; 295. 3; 298. H. 595. 1, 2, 4; 568 and 8. HB. 502. 3, b); 519. 4, b); 521. 1, 2, 3, b). T. 209; 210; 214.

2. **First Periphrastic Conjugation:** G. 514. Rule I (b); 515. Rule II. A. 575. a. B. 269. 3. H. 531; 649. 1. HB. 470. 4, a; 521. 3, b). T. 277.

HINTS

Verbs of Hindering and Refusing. Latin sometimes regards a clause dependent on such a verb as final, sometimes as consecutive. For practical purposes, follow this rule:

(*a*) If the verb of hindering is *not* negatived, use **nē** or **quō minus** with the subjunctive.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) If the verb of hindering *is* negatived, use **quō minus** or **quīn** with the subjunctive. Thus,

(a) *I will hinder you from doing that,*
- (1) **Tē impediam *nē* id faciās.**
- (2) **Tē impediam** } ***quō minus* id faciās.**

(b) *I will not hinder you from doing that,*
- (3) **Tē *nōn* impediam** } ***quō minus* id faciās.**
- (4) **Tē *nōn* impediam *quīn* id faciās.**

The First Periphrastic Conjugation. In the indicative, this combination of the future participle with forms of the verb **sum** is used instead of a simple future to denote intention, probability, and the like. Thus,

Non itūrus est

might mean

He is not about to go,
He is not going to go,
He is not likely to go,
He does not intend to go, etc.

In the subjunctive, this construction will be found chiefly in the following three constructions:

(1) After negative expressions of doubt; as,

Nōn erat dubium quin *victūrī essent*,
There was no doubt that they would (were going to) win.

(2) In indirect questions; as,

Interrogāvī quid *factūrus essēs*,
I asked what you { *were going to do,* / *would do,* / *intended to do,* etc.

(3) In subordinate clauses in indirect discourse; as,

Crēdō praemium quod dux mīlitī *datūrus sit* magnum fore,
I believe that the reward which the general will give the soldier will be a large one.

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE XXXVII

1. There is no doubt that of all the Gauls the Helvetii are the most powerful. 2. I do not refuse, Caesar, to be permanently under your power. 3. Do you know what the tribunes of the soldiers are going to do? 4. I know that they are going to remain in camp. 5. I do not doubt that the centurions will also be cowardly. 6. I hope they will be unarmed. 7. Wild and barbarous men will not restrain themselves from going out into the province. 8. Six hundred ships were held by the wind so that they were unable to come into port. 9. Yet our men were not so thrown into disorder by this attack that they could not preserve their formation. 10. The enemy, after becoming acquainted* with our custom [when] on (of) the march, did not hesitate to make an attack on our column.

11. If you question the Gauls, there is no doubt that their answers will be composed to suit you (they will answer things made up to your wish). 12. Tell me whom you shall urge on to attempt these things. 13. Let no one hinder us from arming ourselves (being armed) and setting forth to save our country. 14. While our men were scattered about the work, there was no one of the enemy but thought that he could easily gain possession of the camp. 15. There is no doubt that we have all been deceived by the feints (sing.) which the Germans have used. 16. If you fail in your duty to your country on account of greed, who doubts that you ought to pay the penalty? 17. Do you know whether [it is] Labienus or some other man [who] will be in command of this cohort? 18. Who will refuse to be loyal? 19. Did you ask why we were not going to send warships to the King? 20. There is no doubt that you must give warships to the King.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXXVIII

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC. SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

1. **Clauses of Characteristic**: G. 631. 1, 2, Remark. A. 537. 2, Notes; 535, a, Notes 1, 2, b. B. 283. 1, 2, a, 4; 282. 3; 284. 2. H. 591. 1, 2, 4, 5, 7. HB. 513. 3; 515. 2; 517. 2; 519. 2; 521. 1, a, b, c. T. 168; 169.

2. **Subjunctive by Attraction (Integral Part)**: G. 508. 4; 629. A. 593. B. 324. 1, 2. H. 652. HB. 539. T. (no reference).

HINTS

Clauses of Characteristic. In deciding whether to use the indicative or subjunctive in a relative clause, the first thing to consider is the ANTECEDENT. Subjoined is a list of the antecedents most commonly accompanied by a relative clause with the verb in the subjunctive. The general distinction between relative clauses which take the indicative and those which take the subjunctive will appear from the following: the sentence

Nōn is est quī cīvitātī *īnsidiātur*, *He is not the man who is plotting against the state,*

means merely that on this particular occasion this man is not a conspirator; but

Nōn is est quī cīvitātī *īnsidiētur*, *He is not the kind of man to (who would) plot against the state,*

means more — that not only is this man not at present a conspirator, but that he does not belong to the conspirator *class.*

Digitized by Google

Typical Clauses of Characteristic

(a) *He is* { *suitable* / *worthy* / *unworthy* } *to receive honor* { 1. *Idōneus* / 2. *Dignus* / 3. *Indignus* } **est quī honōre adficiātur.**

2 and 3 may also be translated *worthy* (*unworthy*) *of receiving honor*. *This is worth hearing* would be **Hōc dīgnum est** *quod audiātur*.

(b) *There are* { *those* / *some* } *who say this is unjust*,
Sunt *quī* **dīcant hōc iniūstum esse.**

(c) { *There is no one* / *There are none* } *who believe(s)* (*to believe*) *you*,
Nēmō est / **Nūllī sunt** } *quī* **tibi** { **crēdat** / **crēdant.**

(d) *Those disagreements were such that they were settled by the massacre of citizens*, **Illae dissēnsiōnēs erant** *ēius modī ut* (*quae*) **interneciōne cīvium dīiūdicātae sint.**

(e) *He was the only one who could not be persuaded*,
1. *Sōlus* / 2. *Ūnus* } *erat cuī* **persuādērī nōn posset.**

(f) *Who is there who does not love his country?* **Quis est** *quī* **patriam nōn amet** (*quīn* **patriam amet**)?

Other forms may be recognized by their general similarity to the above types.

EXERCISE XXXVIII

1. There are [those] who think that we should not launch the ships. 2. We came here of our own accord, to see the legionary soldiers who had been mounted on horses. 3. When the horses had been taken from (withdrawn from) the cavalry, there was no one who did not admire the general's plan. 4. That the conference may not be broken up by this pretext which you have alleged, I will accept the terms. 5. Certainly this hillock does not deserve to be called (is not worthy which should be called) a mountain.

Digitized by Google

6. Who is there who is not ashamed of the damage which the nation has suffered? 7. This is [a feature] of the Gallic custom, to force[1] traders who have come to them to give out where they intend to go next. 8. Is there no one to show us how we may gain access to the King? 9. They were so tired that they did not even remember the prizes that they had won. 10. Who is there who does not think that these matters are worthy of recollection (which we should recollect)?

11. They chose a spot suitable for a camp. 12. He is not fit to be elected (who should be elected) consul. 13. There is no doubt that that which you have brought here should be sent back at once. 14. But he is not [one] who would not be ready to fight to a finish. 15. He is the only one who has asked my advice. 16. He who takes thought only for himself should be despised by all. 17. This was the only [person] who did not suspect that you had your army in Gaul for the purpose of crushing the Gauls. 18. I made it possible for you to achieve the things you desired[2] without any effort (I brought it to pass that you could achieve, etc.). 19. I am not one (is) who would be willing to reduce your native land to [the condition of] a province. 20. In order that the same fighting spirit (eagerness for (of) fighting) which they had displayed (used) before might be instilled into the soldiers, Caesar urged them, with many words, not to forget their old-time prowess.

[1] ut-clause of result, defining hōc.
[2] Latin does not omit the relative.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXXIX

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN DIRECT QUESTIONS. QUESTIONS AND COMMANDS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

1. **The Subjunctive in Direct Questions**: G. 259; 265; 558. A. 444; 462. a. B. 277. H. 557; 559. 4, 5. HB. 503; 513. 1; 515. 1; 517. 1; 519. 1. T. 228.

2. **Questions in Indirect Discourse**: G. 651 and Remarks. A. 586. B. 315 complete. H. 642. 2, 3. HB. 537. b; 591. a. T. 243; 246.

3. **Commands in Indirect Discourse**: G. 652. A. 588 and a, Notes. B. 316. H. 642. 4, 5. HB. 538. T. 245.

HINTS

Questions in the Subjunctive. The mood of the question depends upon the form of the expected answer. Questions in the indicative are answerable by a statement of fact in the indicative, as

What does he see? He sees the enemy.
Quid ***videt?*** **Hostīs** ***videt.***

Questions in the subjunctive are answerable by an imperative, or a statement of obligation, propriety, or the like, as

What am I to do? Come here.
Quid ***faciam?*** **Hūc** ***venī.***

Commands in Indirect Discourse. These become practically exhortations, follow the regular law of sequence, and have the same negative, **nē**. Thus,

Direct. *Don't do this,* **Nōlī hōc facere.**
Indirect. *They exclaimed that he should not do this,* **Conclāmāvērunt** ***hōc nē faceret.***

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE XXXIX

1. He cried out, why were they coming to him? 2. Who would be willing to behold an enemy in the camp? 3. (*a*) Surround the prisoners. (*b*) He said they should surround the prisoners. 4. What was the youth to do? 5. Why should I not feel pained that (**quod**) I cannot instil a greater enthusiasm for (of) fighting into the army? 6. Is not Ariovistus able to use the Gallic tongue from long familiarity? 7. He said, was he not able to use the Gallic tongue? 8. (*a*) Soldiers, encamp two miles beyond Caesar. (*b*) He says, let them camp beyond Caesar. 9. (*a*) What man can keep up with (equal) the speed of a horse? (*b*) He said, who could keep up with the speed of the horse? 10. (*a*) He says not to bind the captives. (*b*) He said not even to bind the captives. (*c*) Don't bind the captives.

11. Let the forces be led forth before the camp for five days in succession. 12. Notice was given that the forces should be led forth before the camp for five days in succession. 13. (*a*) Romans, practise yourselves in this kind of fighting. (*b*) He replied that they should practise themselves in this kind of fighting. 14. Lead out six thousand horsemen, and just as many (of) the swiftest infantrymen. 15. Answer that they are to lead out six thousand cavalry. 16. How are we to live among those whom we despise? 17. He said, might nothing of-exceptional-difficulty (harder) befall! 18. When the signal is given by the trumpet, let us all rush together to arms. 19. Who would determine by [casting] lots what he ought to do? 20. He urged them not to fear the appearance of the Germans, for what harm (gen.) could be done by this?

Digitized by Google

LESSON XL

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE
CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

1. **Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse.** (*a*) **The Apodosis:** G. 656, 2; 657–659. A. 589. 2, a, 1–3, b, 2–4, Note 1. B. 319. A; 320. A; 321. A. H. 646. 1, 2; 647. 1–3. HB. 534. 1, b; 581. b, 1. T. 242. 1–6. (*b*) **The Protasis:** G. 595. Remark 1; 597. Remark 4; 656. 1, 3; 510. A. 589, 1, b, 1; 483; 485. g. B. 319. B, a; 320. B; 321. B; 267; 268. 4. H. 646; 647; 544; 545. HB. 534. 2, II; 536; 581. b, Note; 477. a. T. 242. 1–6.

2. **Conditional Clauses of Comparison:** G. 602. A. 524. B. 307. 1, 2. H. 584. 1–4; HB. 504. 3, a.

HINTS

The Protasis. No new principle is involved. In writing the protasis of a conditional sentence in indirect discourse, notice whether the verb describes completed or incomplete action. If it describes completed action, it must be put in the perfect or pluperfect subjunctive, according to the sequence. If it describes incomplete action, use the present or imperfect subjunctive, according to the sequence. Remember that in these clauses the tense of the subjunctive does *not* indicate the *time when* the act occurs, but only whether it is conceived as *completed* or *continuing* at the time indicated in the apodosis. Thus, a future perfect indicative in protasis of the direct discourse would in indirect discourse become a pluperfect subjunctive if the sequence were primary, a perfect if the sequence were secondary.

The Apodosis. Here also no new principle is involved: the tense of the infinitive indicates the time of the original

Digitized by Google

verb — present for present conditions, perfect for past, and future for future.

Contrary to Fact (Unreal) Conditions. The above rules are modified in the case of conditions contrary to fact, as noted in the references to the grammar.

Conditional Clauses of Comparison. Notice especially the apparent resemblance to contrary to fact conditions, and the difference in the use of the tenses.

EXERCISE XL

1. We fear the absent Ariovistus as if he were present face to face. 2. The envoys complain as if they were oppressed by slavery. 3. (*a*) If all agree, we are talking in vain. (*b*) They say that if all agree, they are talking in vain. (*c*) They said that if all agreed, they were talking in vain. 4. (*a*) Unless they beg for safety with outstretched hands, they will all be killed. (*b*) He says that unless they beg for safety, all will be killed. (*c*) He said that unless they begged for safety, they would all be killed. 5. (*a*) If Caesar was present, he surely heard the uproar. (*b*) I believe that if Caesar was present, he heard the uproar. (*c*) I believed that Caesar had heard the uproar, if he was present. 6. (*a*) If more states were conspiring, we should know [it] from the rumors. (*b*) Don't you think that if more states were conspiring, we should know it from the rumors? (*c*) Did you not think that if more states were conspiring at that time, we should have known it from the rumors? 7. (*a*) If quaestors had been placed in command of the legions, this would have been something new (gen.). (*b*) We know that if quaestors had been placed in command of the legions, this would have been something new. (*c*) We knew that if quaestors had been placed in command of the legions, this would

Digitized by Google

have been something new. 8. Forming a phalanx, they received our charge as if they could not be beaten. 9. If I meet with favorable (suitable) weather for sailing, I shall start for Britain to-morrow. 10. He said that if he should meet with favorable weather for sailing, he should set out on the following day.

11. Unless the right wing withstands the enemy's attack, we shall all be killed at once. 12. I see that unless the right wing withstands the enemy's attack, we shall all be killed at once. 13. If he had been bound with three chains at once, he would not have escaped. 14. (*a*) I believe that if he had been bound, he would not have escaped. (*b*) I believed that if he had been bound, he would not have escaped. 15. (*a*) I believe that if my guest-friend were being dragged to death, I should be trying to help him. (*b*) I believed that if he were being dragged to death, I should be trying to help him. 16. As I said above, unless I had been informed of this by frequent rumors, I should never have entered upon this plan. 17. He made [it] plain that he would not have formed this plan unless he had been compelled [to]. 18. He would not have been banished from his native land if he had not thrice attempted to seize the throne. 19. Is it not pretty certain that if he had tried to seize the throne, he would have been banished from his native land? 20. The enemy are running down from the top of the hill as though our men were pursuing them.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XLI

THE ABLATIVE SUPINE. SIXTY SENTENCES FOR GENERAL REVIEW

The Ablative Supine: G. 436. 2. A. 510. Notes 1 and 2. B. 340. 2, a, b. H. 635. 1, 2. HB. 619. 1 and Note 1. T. 276.

EXERCISE XLI

1. It is not easy to reach there (thither) by travelling overland (infantry marches). 2. He considered that the best thing to do was to wage war on the Veneti by land and sea. 3. After addressing the Remi in a gracious speech, Caesar commanded their children to be brought to him [as] hostages. 4. Why should we not try-to-find-out by what passes the mountain can be crossed? 5. The ships having been carried down to the lower harbor by the tide, the pilots announced to the sailors that the greatest effort must be made so that they should not fall into the hands (come into the power) of the enemy. 6. Since these things were industriously attended to by all, the fortification of the camp was completed at daybreak. 7. Caesar said that the Gauls' [method of] besieging was the same [as that] which the Belgae used. 8. Some were throwing missiles from the wall, but others had stopped fighting for a little while. 9. Forming a testudo, they approach the gates, that they may bring aid to those-who-are-in-difficulty (pres. part.). 10. He did not refuse to send help up to Iccius.

11. After this oration had been delivered, such enthusiasm for (of) the war was inspired in the minds of all that

Digitized by Google

they shouted they were ready to fight at once. 12. Neither of these men shall be called brave unless he shall return either victorious or wounded. 13. Do not make war on those who have always been friends to you. 14. Those should be especially believed who have never (not ever) deceived you even a little. 15. By this means they presented the appearance of fighters (pres. part. of **pugnō**). 16. Although the grain supply has already begun to fail us, we shall not cease from the assault nor forget our old-time prowess. 17. Hearing the uproar, they hoped that their allies had already gained possession of the camp. 18. Since each one was hastening to reach home, they made the departure seem like a rout. 19. Our men, pursuing those who had been the first to cross the river (had first (adj.) crossed), surrounded and* killed a great number of them. 20. Do you know on what day this place will be unoccupied by (empty of) soldiers?

21. There is no doubt that they will throw stones of great weight at the enemy 22. Is not the Romans' fleet much larger than [that] of the Veneti? 23. Unless you are skilled in military science, I advise you not to wage war against the Romans. 24. He said that if there had been some soldiers on guard in front of the camp and on the rampart, the enemy would not have dared to come near the camp. 25. Because I say that you hid in the woods for the purpose of plundering, do you not both feel ashamed and repent of this? 26. Before those who were hard pressed by the enemy could look back, they were surrounded from all sides. 27. After he had come (down) to the tenth legion, he found that on his departure some had withdrawn from the battle. 28. While they were awaiting the outcome of the fight, they were surrounded and* killed by the horsemen. 29. The moment that the

Digitized by Google

opportunity offered (was presented) they began secretly to withdraw from the conflict.

30. Provided the fleet is repaired, we shall be able to make war on the Gauls next summer. 31. Let us tarry in these regions until our house is built. 32. Unless you know the harbors and islands, I am afraid that you cannot return in safety (safe). 33. When Caesar had assigned the ships to the cavalry, he commanded all to weigh anchor towards evening. 34. The ships were borne away from the port by wind and waves as if they had neither anchors nor cables. 35. Caesar said that the ships were made of oak, and shallower than what they were accustomed to use in their own seas. 36. Does that man deserve to be trusted who we know has twice already tried to murder the consul? 37. Does not a clever man, (and) skilled in military science, know everything that is necessary for warfare (of which there is need for fighting)? 38. He said that provision must be made so that we should be able to avail ourselves of (use) the assistance of all, and not be in want of anything which was useful in (for) making war. 39. Unless you put your country before everything else, I shall believe that you are far from (too little) patriotic.

40. Everywhere those are believed whom we know to have done the things (ea) which they promised to do. 41. If the loads are light, we can easily carry them. 42. When the sheds had been moved up and the mound built up,* we realized from the departure of the enemy that they perceived that they could no longer hold out. 43. They hoped by interposing a delay* to have time for recalling the cavalry. 44. They are not even permitted to use wine. 45. He made up his mind that he must yield to no one. 46. He said that another hill would be seen across the river, facing this. 47. Time was not given

Digitized by Google

even for fitting on the badges. 48. This battle is said to have had varying results, because it was fought in a very thick forest (the results of this battle are said to have been varying, etc.). 49. At the ninth hour they reached the town, out of breath.

50. They will force us from the heights into the river, if we give them a chance at (of) us. 51. Let the soldiers of the eighth legion and all who are more exhausted (slower) by their wounds, return to camp. 52. Had he not leaned forward, exhausted by his wounds, he would have seen that we were going to bring him aid. 53. When they had extended a double wall from the town to the harbor, did they not consider that Athens was well fortified? 54. When the front rank (first) had fallen, [those] nearest stood upon them and fought from the bodies. 55. Caesar said that because this town had very high cliffs on all sides, to take it by storm would not be an easy thing to do. 56. When the mound was built up, the enemy promised to surrender. 57. We are willing to suffer what fortune you will [at the hands] of the Roman people rather than to be tortured and killed by these (be killed by these through torture). 58. He said that if the hides had been sold to the inhabitants of (those who inhabited) the seacoast, sails would have been made out of them. 59. When the assizes in (of) Cisalpine Gaul were finished,* he made up his mind that he must hasten to the army with all speed. 60. Calling a council on the next day, he exhorted them not to be troubled by the disaster which they had suffered on the previous day, nor to despair of safety.

Digitized by Google

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

VOCABULARY I

Nouns

army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
Celt, Celta, -ae, *m.*
division, part, pars, partis, *f.*
Gaul (*the country*), Gallia, -ae, *f.*
Gaul (*inhabitant of Gaul*), Gallus, ī, *m.*
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*
province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*
river, flūmen, -minis, *n.*

Pronoun

who, *interr.*, quis, quid, (*adjective forms*) quī, quae, quod.

Verbs

carry on, wage, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
inhabit, incolō, -ere, -uī.
separate, dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum.

Adverbs

not, nōn.
why, cūr.

Preposition

through, per, *with acc.*

Conjunction

and, et, -que (*enclitic*), atque. **Et** *simply connects;* **-que** *connects words belonging closely together in thought;* **atque** *gives emphasis to what follows.*

Idiom

march, iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.

VOCABULARY II

Nouns

bank, rīpa, -ae, *f.*
Belgian, Belga, -ae, *m.*
enemy, foe, (*public*), hostis, -is, *m.*, *generally in pl.;* (*private*), inimīcus, -ī, *m.*
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*; imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
march, iter, itineris, *n.*
Roman, Rōmānus, -ī, *m.*
trader, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*

Pronouns

he, she, it, *dem.*, is, ea, id, *gen.* ēius; ille, -a, -ud, *gen.* illīus
himself, herself, itself, *intens.*, ipse, -a, -um.
our, ours, *poss. adj. and pron.*, noster, -tra, -trum.
that, *dem.*, ille, -a, -ud; is, ea, id.

Adjectives

brave, fortis, -e.
long, longus, -a, -um.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
three, trēs, tria.

Verbs

be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
call, appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
keep away (*trans.*), prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.

Adverbs

already, iam.
at length, tandem.
formerly, quondam.
now, (*with past events still in mind*), iam; (*without reference to other time*), nunc.
then, tum.

Conjunction

but, autem (*postpositive*); sed.

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY III

Nouns

battle, proelium, -ī, *n.*
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
influence, auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*
land, territories, fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
north, septentriō, -ōnis, *m., generally in pl.*
people (*nation*), populus, -ī, *m.*
soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*
thing, rēs, reī, *f. When the word "thing" or "things" is found combined with an adj. or pron:, it is generally best to use simply the neuter form of the adj. or pron., except in forms like the abl. pl., where the gender would not be evident. "He said many things" would be* multa dīxit; *not* multās rēs dīxit.
tribe, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*; gēns, gentis, *f.*

Pronouns

this, hīc, haec, hōc, *dem.*
who, which, what, that, *rel.*, qui, quae, quod.

Adjectives

all, omnis, -e.
another, alius, -a, -ud. *Instead of the regular gen. form,* alīus, *it is better to use* **alterius** (*the gen. of* **alter**), *or the adj.* aliēnus, -a, -um (*literally "another's"*), *in direct agreement with the modified word.*
confined, angustus, -a, -um.
daily, of daily occurrence, cotīdiānus, -a, -um.
high, altus, -a, -um.
large, magnus, -a, -um.
many, much, multus, -a, -um.
one, ūnus, -a, -um, *gen.* ūnīus.
other, (*another*), alius, -a, -ud (*see above*); **the other** (*of two*), alter, -a, -um, *gen.* alterius; **the others, the rest, the remaining, ——** cetera, -um (*nom. sing. m. not found*); reliquus, -a, -um.
own, (my, your, *etc.*), *use the possessive adjective, either alone, or, for greater emphasis, combined with the gen. of* ipse. *See "Hints."*
small, parvus, -a, -um.
third, tertius, -a, -um.

Verbs

bound, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
contend, engage, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
excite, permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
differ, differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum.
make, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.
slope, vergō, vergere.
thoroughly terrify, perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

Adverb

often, saepe.

Preposition

by, ā, ab, *with abl. Before a vowel or* h *only the form* ab *may be used.*

Idioms

for the reason that, propterea quod.
from one another, inter sē (*literally, "between themselves"*).

VOCABULARY IV

Nouns

arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
authority, *see* **influence**, *voc. iii.*
Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
country, *see* **land**, *voc. iii.*
courage, valor, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
journey, *see* **march**, *voc. ii.*
matter, rēs, reī, *f.*
nation, *see* **people**, *voc. iii.*
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
spirit, animus, -ī, *m.*
swiftness, celeritās, -tātis, *f.*

Pronoun

you, tu, tuī; *pl.* vōs, *gen.* vestrum *and* vestrī.

Digitized by Google

Adjectives

great, *see* **large**, *voc. iii.*
lofty, *see* **high**, *voc. iii.*
wearied, dēfessus, -a, -um.

Verbs

accomplish, bring to an end, cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
alarm, *see* **thoroughly terrify**, *voc. iii.*
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.
climb, ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum.
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
hinder, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
please, dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
set out, proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum.
wound, vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Adverbs

always, semper.
never, numquam.
nevertheless, tamen.

Preposition

with, together with, cum, *with abl.*

Idiom

not only but also, nōn modo sed etiam.

VOCABULARY V

Nouns

border, fīnis, -is, *m.*
ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*
earthwork, vāllum, -ī, *n.*
forest, wood, silva, -ae, *f.*
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
marsh, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*
name, nōmen, -minis, *n.*
proconsul, prōcōnsul, -ulis, *m.*
propraetor, prōpraetor, -ōris, *m.*
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*

Adjectives

fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre.
four, quattuor, *indecl.*
free, līber, -era, -erum.
only, sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* sōlīus.
whole, whole of, tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.* tōtīus.

Verbs

appoint, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
conquer, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
defend, (*by fighting*), dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum; (*by fortifying*), **fortify**, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
fight, *see* **contend**, *voc. iii.*
go, eō, īre, iī, itum.
govern, rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum.
greatly alarm, *see* **thoroughly terrify**, *voc. iii.*

Adverb

generally, for the most part, plērumque.

Conjunction

or, aut; **either . . . or**, aut . . . aut.

VOCABULARY VI

Nouns

captive, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
chief command, imperium, -ī, *n.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
country (*as distinguished from the city*), rūs, rūris, *n.* (*loc.* rūrī).
freedom, liberty, lībertās, -tātis, *f.*
island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
limit, *see* **border**, *voc. v.*
letter, littera, -ae, *f. The sing. means a letter of the alphabet; the pl., an epistle.*
multitude, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*, *n.*
ocean, Oceanus, -ī, *m.* (*a proper noun in Latin*).
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
side, latus, -eris, *n.*
town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*

Adjective

broad, lātus, -a, -um.

Verbs

bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
delight, *see* **please**, *voc. iv.*
embark, cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *with* in *and acc., or acc. alone.*
follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
protect, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum.

Digitized by Google

return, revertor, -ī, -versus sum. *In the perfect tenses, the active forms*, revertī, *etc., are regular.*
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum.
set free, līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
speak, loquor, -ī, locūtus sum.
start, *see* **set out**, *voc. iv.*
take, (*of persons*), dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum; (*of things carried*), ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.

Adverbs

also, quoque.
where, ubi.

Prepositions

for, to (*of the end of motion*), ad *or* in, *with acc.*
on, in, *with abl.*

VOCABULARY VII

Nouns

cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.; or use the pl. of* eques, -itis, *m.*, "horseman."
chief, prīnceps, -cipis, *m.*
footsoldier, pedes, -itis, *m.*
news, nūntius, -ī, *m.*

Adjective

tenth, decimus, -a, -um.

Verbs

be eager for, studeō, -ēre, -uī, *with dat.*
be in command of, praesum, -esse, -fuī, *with dat.*
be indulgent to, indulgeō, -ēre, -dulsī, -dultum, *with dat.*
believe, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum, *with dat.*
command, order, make requisition, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with the dat. of the person to whom the request is made. The thing asked for is in the acc.*
harm, noceō, -ēre, -uī, *with dat.*
help, adsum, -esse, -fuī, *with dat.;* iuvo, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, *with acc.*
obey, pareō, -ēre, -uī, *with dat.*
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *with dat.*
place in command, praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with acc. of the person appointed and dat. of that of which he is placed in command.*
please, placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with dat.*
resist, resistō, -ere, -stitī, *with dat.*
take one's side, faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, *with dat.*

Adverbs

bravely, fortiter.
easily, facile.
especially, maximē.

Idioms

make war on, bellum īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with dat.*
revolution, rēs novae, rērum novārum, *f. pl.*

VOCABULARY VIII

Nouns

cart, carrus, -ī, *m.*
embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*; **large number**, *either* magnus numerus *or* multitūdō (*see voc. vi.*).
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
state, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*

Adjectives

eighty, octōgintā, *indecl.*
forty, quadrāgintā, *indecl.*
two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a.

Verbs

establish, cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
get ready, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
indulge, *see* **be indulgent to**, *voc. vii.*
pardon, ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *with dat.*
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum, *with dat.*
trust, cōnfīdō, -ere, cōnfīsus sum, *semi-dep., with dat.*
undertake, suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

Idioms

on account of, ob *or* propter, *with acc., or abl. of cause;* **on account of**

Digitized by Google

which thing, quam ob rem *or* quā rē.
both . . . and, et . . . et.

VOCABULARY IX

Nouns

aid, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
expedition, *see* **march**, *voc. ii.*
hindrance, impedīmentum, -ī, *n.*
lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.*
place, locus, -ī, *m. The pl. is generally n.*, loca, -ōrum. *The m. pl. forms*, locī, locōs, *are used of places in a book.*
protection, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
reinforcement, subsidium, -ī, *n.*
reward, mūnus, -eris, *n.*
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*
use, ūsus, -ūs, *m.*

Adjectives

a match for, pār, paris, *with dat.*
entire, the, *see* **whole**, *voc. v.*
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um.
like, similis, -e.
nearer, propior, propius; **nearest**, proximus, -a, -um.
neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um.
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
two, duo, -ae, -o.

Verbs

appoint, choose, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
leave, abandon, relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum.

VOCABULARY X

Nouns

attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *m.*
terms, *pl. of* condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*

Pronoun

my, mine, *poss. pron. and adj.*, meus, -a, -um.

Adjectives

of noble birth, nōbilis, -e.
rest of, remaining, reliquus, -a, -um, *not followed by gen., but in direct agreement with modified word.*
unexpected, repentīnus, -a, -um.

Verbs

accept, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
alarm, commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
arrive at, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* ad *and acc., or, in the case of words like* domus, *etc., with acc. alone.*
do, make, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum; (*carry on*), agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
kill, put to death, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
lead across, trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *with 2 acc. or* trans *and acc.*
overtake, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
prepare, *see* **get ready**, *voc. viii.*
prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

Adverbs

again, rursus.
not yet, nōndum.
soon, mox.
very little, minimē.

Conjunctions

and so, accordingly, itaque.
but, autem, *postpositive.*
therefore, igitur, *generally postpos.*
very little, minimē.

VOCABULARY XI

Nouns

brother, frāter, frātris, *m.*
commander, imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
institution, īnstitūtum, -ī, *n.*
retainer, cliēns, -entis, *m.*
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
son, fīlius, -ī, *m.*
spear, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
supply, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
throne (*kingdom*), rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
village, vīcus, -ī, *m.*
weapons, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
work, opus, -eris, *n.*

Digitized by Google

Pronoun

same, the, Īdem, eadem, idem.
your, yours, *poss. pron. and adj.*, (*sing.*), tuus, -a, -um; (*pl.*), vester, -tra, -trum.

Adjectives

four hundred, quadringentī, -ae, -a.
ten, decem, *indecl.*
twelve, duodecim, *indecl.*

Verbs

be away, absum, -esse, āfuī.
bear (*arms, etc.*), gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum. (*Cf.* **wage,** *voc. i.*)
finish, perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
get ready, *see* **make ready,** *voc. viii.*
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Adverbs

before, ante; anteā.
far, longē.
in the same way, item.

VOCABULARY XII

Nouns

evening, vesper, -erī, *m.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
summer, aestās, -tātis, *f.*
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*
watch, vigilia, -ae, *f.*
winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*

Pronoun

very (*actual*), *intens.*, ipse, -a, um, *gen.* ipsīus. (*Cf.* **himself,** *voc. ii.*)

Adjectives

farther, ulterior, -ius.
fourth, quartus, -a, -um.
middle, middle of, medius, -a, -um, *not followed by gen., but in direct agreement with the modified word.*
thirty, trīgintā, *indecl.*

Verbs

advance, prōgredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
reach, *see* **arrive at,** *voc. x.*
remain, stay, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
struggle, *see* **contend,** *voc. iii.*

Adverbs

here, (*in this place*), hīc; (*to this place, hither*), hūc.
how, *quam.*
long, (*of time*), diū, *comp.* diūtius, *sup.* diūtissimē.
there, (*in that place*), ibi; (*to that place, thither*), eō.
to-day, hodiē.
where, (*in what place*), ubi; (*to what place, whither*), quō.

Idioms

adversity, rēs adversae, rērum adversārum, *f. pl.*
at dawn, prīmā lūce, *abl. f.*
towards evening, sub vesperum.
mile, mīlle passūs, *pl.* mīlia passuum, *n.*
midnight, media nox, mediae noctis, *f.*
prosperity, rēs secundae, rērum secundārum, *f. pl.*

VOCABULARY XIII

Nouns

arms, see **weapons,** *voc. xi.*
audacity, boldness, daring, audācia, -ae, *f.*
breadth, width, lātitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
height, altitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
high rank, nobility, nōbilitās, -tātis, *f.*
popularity, grātia, -ae, *f.*
training, exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

Adjectives

bold, audāx, -ācis.
deep, *see* **high,** *voc. iii.*
equal, pār, paris. (*Cf.* **a match for,** *voc. ix.*)
fifteen, quīndecim, *indecl.*
hundred, centum, *indecl.*
sixteen, sēdecim, *indecl.*
such, tālis, -e, *or* ēius modī, *gen. of description.*
the other, *see* **other,** *voc. iii.*
utmost, summus, -a, -um. (*Pos.* superus, **high**; *comp.* superior.)

Verbs

occupy, obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.

Digitized by Google

scale, ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum.
surpass, praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitum *or* -statum, *with dat.*
surround, circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *with acc. of thing surrounded and abl. of that with which it is surrounded, or acc. of thing surrounding and dat. of that which it surrounds.*

Adverb

with difficulty, scarcely, vix.

Prepositions

among, apud, *with acc.*
toward (*of disposition*), in, *with acc.*

Idiom

of this kind, such, ēius modī, *gen. of description.*

VOCABULARY XIV

Nouns

death, mors, mortis, *f.*
eagerness, studium, -ī, *n.*
east, oriēns, -entis, *m.* (*sc.* sōl).
good sense, plan, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
rumor, rūmor, -ōris, *m.*
sister, soror, -ōris, *f.*
yoke, iugum, -ī, *n.*

Pronoun

I, ego, meī, *pl.*, nōs, nostrī *and* nostrum, *pers.*

Adjectives

bad, malus, -a, -um.
courageous, *see* **brave,** *voc. ii.*
good, bonus, -a, -um.
hither, citerior, -ius.
swift, celer, celeris, celere.

Verbs

approve of, probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be in the habit of, *perf. of* cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, *with inf.*
hem in, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
prevail upon, indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
travel to, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* ad *and acc., or acc. alone of words like* domus, *etc.*

Adverbs

early, mātūrē.
even, etiam.
less, minus.
little, a (*with comparatives*), paulō.
more, magis.
much (*with comparatives*), multō.
on the day before, prīdiē.
previously, anteā. (*Cf.* **before,** *voc. xi.*)
quickly, celeriter.
rather, too, *express by the comparative.*
than, quam, *or use the abl. of comparison.*
very, *use the superlative.*

Preposition

under, sub, *with acc. to denote motion, abl. to denote rest.*

Idioms

form a plan, cōnsilium capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
older, māior nātū (*literally, "greater in respect to birth"*).
than one would suppose, opīniōne, *abl. of comparison.*
younger, minor nātū (*literally, "less in respect to birth"*).
west, sōlis occāsus, -ūs, *m.* (*literally, "setting of the sun"*).

VOCABULARY XV

Nouns

consul, cōnsul, -is, *m.*
Geneva, Genāva, -ae, *f.*
hostile act, outrage, maleficium, -ī, *n.*
position, *see* **place,** *voc. ix.*
route, *see* **journey,** *voc. iv.*
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
troops, *see* **forces,** *voc. iv.*
wrong (*act of wrong*), iniūria, -ae, *f*
year, annus, -ī, *m.*

Adjectives

any, ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* ūllīus.
earlier, superior, -ius.
every, *see* **all,** *voc. iii.*
five hundred, quīngentī, -ae, -a.
following, the, ille, -a, -ud.

Digitized by Google

hostile, inimīcus, -a, -um.
noble, *see* **of noble birth,** *voc. x.*

Verbs

abstain, temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
concede, concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
go on (*of events*), *pass. of* gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
hurry, *see* **struggle,** *voc. xii.*
kill, occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum. (*Cf. voc. x.*)
rout, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
say (*quoting exact words of speaker*), inquam, inquit, *pl.* inquiunt, *defective verb.*

Adverbs

in all, altogether, omnīnō.
more, amplius.

Prepositions

about, dē, *with abl.*
without, sine, *with abl.*

Conjunctions

because, quod.
for, nam.
then (*as in the phrase, "what, then," etc.*), igitur, *generally postpositive.*

Idioms

as . . . as possible, quam, *with the superlative, and either with or without forms of* possum.
do wrong to, iniūriam īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with dat.*
inform (some one), certiōrem (aliquem) faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum (*literally, "make more certain"*).
I intend, mihi in animō est, *with infin.* (*literally, "I have in mind"*).
remember, memoriā teneō, -ēre, -uī (*literally, "hold in memory"*).

VOCABULARY XVI

Nouns

branch, rāmus, -ī, *m.*
contest, certāmen, -minis, *n.*
direction, *see* **part,** *voc. i.*
distance, space, spatium, -ī, *n.*
flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*
judgment; scheme, *see* **plan,** *voc. xiv.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
shout, clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
size, magnitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
tract, *see* **place,** *voc. ix.*
tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*
view, opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.*
wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*
way, via, -ae, *f.*

Pronouns

certain, a, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *and adj.* quoddam.
some, aliquis, aliquid, (*adj. forms,* aliquī, aliqua, aliquod); nōnnūllī, -ae, -a; (*certain*), quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *and adj.* quoddam; **some. . . others,** aliī . . . aliī.
which of two, uter, utra, utrum, *gen.* utrīus.

Adjectives

alone, only, sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* sōlīus.
both, each (*of two*), uterque, utraque, utrumque, *gen.* utrīusque.
end of, extrēmus, -a, -um, *not followed by gen., but in direct agreement with the modified word.*
how many, quot, *indecl.*
midst of, *see* **middle,** *voc. xii.*
one (*of two*), alter, -era, -erum; **one . . . another,** alius . . . alius; **one . . . the other,** alter . . . alter.
six, sex, *indecl.*
top of, summus, -a, -um, *used like* extrēmus *and* medius *above.*

Verbs

cut down, caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum.
obscure, occulō, -ere, -uī, -cultum.
raise, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
seek, petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum.
spring (*of growth*), nāscor, -ī, nātus sum (*literally, "be born"*).
used to, *express by the impf., or by the plup. of* cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suetum, *or by* soleō, -ēre, solitus sum.

Adverb

enough, satis (*also used* as *indecl. adj. and noun*).

Digitized by Google

Prepositions

among, between, inter, *with acc.*
near, ad, *with acc.*

Conjunction

nor, and not, neque *or* nec; **neither . . . nor,** neque . . . neque; nec . . . nec. *Before a vowel or* h *only the form* neque *may be used.*

Idioms

at this time; at that time, id temporis.
for a little distance, paulum spatī.
none, (*nothing*), nihil; (*no one*), nēmō, *gen.* nūllīus (*see grammar*); (*adj.*), nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* nūllīus.

VOCABULARY XVII

Nouns

crime, scelus, -eris, *n.*
hope, spēs, speī, *f.*
kindness, beneficium, -ī, *n.*
oath, iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.*
suspicion, suspiciō, -ōnis, *f.*

Pronoun

each one, every one, everything, quisque, quaeque, quidque, *and adj.* quodque, *indef.*

Adjectives

desirous, eager, cupidus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
experienced, familiar, perītus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
inexperienced, imperītus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
sharing, particeps, -cipis, *with gen. Also used as m. noun,* **sharer, partner.**

Verbs

abolish, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum. (*Cf.* **raise,** *voc. xvi.*)
accuse, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be ashamed, pudet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., with acc. of person and gen. of thing.*
be tired, taedet, -ēre, *impers., with acc. of person and gen. of thing.*
bring against, īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with acc. of thing brought and dat. of that against which it is brought.*
commit (*of crimes*), faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
condemn, damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
conspire, coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
find irksome, piget, -ēre, -uit *and* pigitum est, *impers., with acc. of person and gen. of thing.*
forget, obliviscor, -ī, oblītus sum.
it is to the interest of, interest, -esse, -fuit, -futūrus, *impers., with gen.; except that when the person interested is represented in English by a personal pronoun, Latin uses the abl. sing. f. of the corresponding possessive.*
keep, teneō, -ēre, -uī.
lay down, dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
remember, meminī, -isse.
repent, paenitet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., with acc. of person and gen. of thing.*

Adverbs

greatly, magnopere. *To express degree of concern with verbs like* interest, *etc.,* magnī.
notwithstanding, nevertheless, tamen.
very much, maximē.

Prepositions

from, ab, ā; ex, ē; dē, *with abl.*

Idiom

Not even, nē . . . quidem, *separated by the emphatic word.*

VOCABULARY XVIII

Nouns

badge, īnsīgne, -is, *n.*
beginning, initium, -ī, *n.*
defender, dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.*
end, fīnis, -is, *m.; in pl. it may mean* **borders, territories, land,** *etc.*
head, caput, capitis, *n.*
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*; **at home,** domī; **from home,** domō; (*to*) **home,** domum.
iron, ferrum, -ī, *n.*
navigation, nāvigātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
neighbor, fīnitimus, -ī, *m.*
purpose, *see* **plan,** *voc. xiv.*

Digitized by Google

region, *see* **place**, *voc. ix.*
silver, argentum, -ī, *n.*

Pronouns

that (of yours), iste, -a, -ud, *gen.* istīus, *dem.*

Adjectives

iron, ferreus, -a, -um.
most distant, ūltimus, -a, -um.
silver, argenteus, -a, -um.

Verbs

be descended, orior, -īrī, ortus sum, *fut. part.* oritūrus (*literally*, "*rise*").
be without, lack, careō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with abl.*
denude, strip, nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
deprive, rob, prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
desist, dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, *with* ab, dē, ex, *or simple abl.*
extend, pertineō, -ēre, -uī.
go from, leave, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *with* ab, ex, *or* dē.
pity, misereor, -ērī, -itus sum, *with gen.*
wear (*of clothing*), gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum. (*Cf.* **bear**, *voc. xi.*)

Adverbs

again, iterum.
almost, ferē.
from every side, on all sides, undique.
hither, hūc.
to-morrow, crās.
whence, unde.
yesterday, herī.

VOCABULARY XIX

Nouns

advantage, commodum, -ī, *n.*
chain, catēna, -ae, *f.*
children, puerī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*; (*of free parents*), līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*
land (*opposed to sea*), terra, -ae, *f.*
need, opus, *n.*, *indecl.*
service, mūnus, -eris, *n.*
woman, mulier, -ieris, *f.*

Adjective

worthy, dignus, -a, -um, *with abl.*

Verbs

be able, possum, posse, potuī.
begin, incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum; **began**, coepī, -isse; (*with pass. infin.*), coeptus sum.
be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
come out, ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
command, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum.
compel, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, *with infin.*
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *semi-dep.*
devote, surrender, dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
enjoy, fruor, -ī, frūctus sum, *with abl.*
go out, exeo, -īre, -iī, -itum.
hasten, (*with effort*), contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum; (*go promptly*), mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*go swiftly*), properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
hesitate, dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
long for, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; oportet, -ēre, -uit, *impers.*
perform, fungor, -ī, fūnctus sum, *with abl.*
select, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
take, (*by storm*), expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*take possession of*), pōtior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *with abl.*
try, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *with infin.*
wish, be willing, volō, velle, voluī.

Adverbs

daily, cotīdiē.
whither, quō.

Idiom

journey, *see* **march**, *voc. i.*

VOCABULARY XX

Nouns

help, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
host, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
missile, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
movement, mōtus, -ūs, *m.*
onslaught, attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
origin, orīgō, -ginis, *f.*
supplies, commeātus -ūs, *m.*
tower, turris, -is, *f.*

Digitized by Google

Pronoun

any one, anything, quisquam, quicquam, *indef.* (*used after negatives*).
the former, ille, -a, -ud, *gen.* illīus. (*Cf. voc. ii.*)

Adjectives

few, paucī, -ae, -a.
low, īnferus, -a, -um.
remotest, extrēmus, -a, -um.
several, complūrēs, -a *and* -ia, *gen. pl.* complūrium.
unknown, ignōtus, -a, -um.

Verbs

become master of, *see* **take possession of**, *voc. xix.*
be unable, nōn possum, posse, potuī.
check, *see* **keep away**, *voc. ii.*
cut off, interclūdo, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum.
linger, moror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
look, spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reach to (*extend to*), attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum.
run away, flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī.
shoot, cōniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
slope, vergō, -ere.
want, *see* **wish**, *voc. xix.*
withstand, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.

Adverbs

at times, nōn numquam.
ever (*always*), semper.
frequently, saepe.

Prepositions

between, inter, *with acc.*
in proportion to, prō, *with abl.*
towards, ad, *with acc.*

VOCABULARY XXI

Nouns

ambuscade, stratagem, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
back, tergum, -ī, *n.*
fire, ignis, -is, *m.*
intention, *see* **purpose**, *voc. xviii.*
opportunity, potestās, -tātis, *f.*
vassal, cliēns, -entis, *m.*
wound, vulnus, -eris, *n.*

Adjectives

exhausted, cōnfectus, -a, -um (*part. of* cōnficiō).
short, brevis, -e.
so many, tot, *indecl.*

Verbs

bring together, condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
burn, incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsum.
exhort, urge, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
fall into, incidō, -ere, -cidī, *with* in *and acc.*
fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
gain, win over, conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
it results (*impers.*), *third pers. sing. of* fīō, fierī, factus sum.
move about, wander, vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
prevail upon, indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
pursue, persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
slay, *see* **kill**, *voc. xi.*
take, (*carry*), portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*capture*), capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.

Adverbs

fiercely, ācriter.
recklessly, temerē.
to the same place, eōdem.
widely, lātē.

Conjunctions

and not, neque, nec; (*in final clauses*), nēve, neu. *Before a vowel or* h *only the forms* neque *and* nēve *may be used.*
in order to, ut; *neg.* nē.
lest, nē.
that, (1) (*in final and consecutive clauses*), ut; *neg.* (*final only*) nē, (*consecutive*), ut nōn; (2) *in substantive clauses* (*see Grammar*), quod.

Idioms

give an opportunity at, over, of, *etc.*, potestātem faciō, -ere, -fēcī, factum, *with gen.*
set fire to, ignem subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *with dat.*

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY XXII

Nouns

ally, socius, -ī, *m.*
council, concilium, -ī, *n.*
force, vīs, vīs, *f.*
ford, vādum, -ī, *n.*
length, longitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
peril, *see* **danger**, *voc. iv.*
reason, causa, -ae, *f.*

Adjectives

fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
in good condition, strong, fīrmus, -a, -um.
in light marching order, expedītus, -a, -um.

Verbs

allow, patior, -ī, passus sum.
approach, appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
arouse, incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
ask, rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
disclose, ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
extend, pateō, -ēre, -uī.
find, inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
flow, fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum.
hope, spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
make out, discern, cernō, -ere, crēvī, certum.
report, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
say that . . . not, negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
subdue, pacify, pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
think, exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
undergo, subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.

Adverb

thence, from that place, inde.

Preposition

on account of, ob, *with acc.*

Idiom

adopt, ad mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

VOCABULARY XXIII

Nouns

baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.* (*used of heavy baggage*).
chance, potestās, -ātis, *f.* (*Cf. Idioms, voc. xxi.*)
country (*native land*), patria, -ae, *f.*
daylight, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
defile, narrow pass, angustiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
enterprise, rēs, reī, *f.*
protecting force, praesidium, -ī, *n.*
raft, ratis, -is, *f.*
redoubt, castellum, -ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
two days (*period of*), bīduum, -ī, *n.*

Adjectives

easy, facilis, -e.
nine, novem, *indecl.*
one at a time, singulī, -ae, -a.
unwilling, invītus, -a, -um.

Verbs

ask for, rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with two acc.*; petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *with acc. of thing asked, and* ab *with the abl. of the person entreated.*
bring to pass, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
connect, iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum.
construct (*of a wall*), perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
demand, postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc. of thing demanded and* ab *with the abl. of the person of whom the demand is made.*
help, adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum, *with acc.*
hire, condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
know, (*be aware*), sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum; (*know with understanding*), intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
make war, bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
place at intervals, dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
possess, *see* **have**, *voc. xi.*
ravage, populōr, -ārī, -ātus sum.
scare, perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
settle, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
stop, *see* **keep away**, *voc. ii.*
think, putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
throw, cōniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum. (*Cf.* **shoot**, *voc. xv.*)

Adverbs

gladly, libenter.
meanwhile, in the meanwhile, intereā.

Digitized by Google

Preposition

before, ante, *with acc.*

Idioms

name a day, diem dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
for the purpose (of), causā, *abl. of cause, following the gen., or* eō cōnsiliō *with final clause.*

VOCABULARY XXIV

Nouns

fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*
means, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
rally, concursus, -ūs, *m.*

Adjectives

five, quīnque, *indecl.*
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.

Verbs

be permitted, may, licet, -ere, -uit *and* licitum est.
cast down, dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
conceal, cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
display, ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
drive back, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
gain (*a request*), impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
gather, *see* **get ready**, *voc. viii.*
lead out, ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
move up, adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum.
must, ought, oportet, -ere, -uit, *impers.; or use the second periphrastic.*
promise, polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum.
report, bring back word, renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sail, nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
station, place, collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
tell, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.

Adverb

there, in that place, ibi.

Preposition

about, circum, *with acc.*

Idioms

of my, your, his, *etc.* **own accord**, meā, tuā, suā, *etc.*, sponte.
supply of grain, rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, *f.*

VOCABULARY XXV

Nouns

calamity, disaster, calamitās, -tātis, *f.*
clan, pāgus, -ī, *m.*
comrade, socius, -ī, *m.* (*Cf.* **ally**, *voc. xxii.*)
head (*chief*), prīnceps, -cipis, *m.*
intention, intentions, animus, -ī, *m.* (*when it means "spirit." When it means "purpose," the word is* cōnsilium).
region, tract, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
quarter (*place*), pars, partis, *f.*

Adjectives

ancient, of former times, prīstinus, -a, -um.
old, vetus, -eris.
serious, weighty, gravis, -e.
victorious, victor, -ōris. *Also used as m. subst.*, **victor.**

Verbs

attack, adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum (*literally, "rise up against"*).
beg for, petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum, *with* ab *and abl. of the person entreated.*
beware, caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum.
despise, dēspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum.
determine, *see* **settle**, *voc. xxiii.*
hide, abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (*trans.*).
suffer (*of disaster*), accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
let (*of mistaken permissions*), committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *with final clause.*

Adverbs

it is true; indeed (*parenthetical*), quidem.
still, etiam.
surely, profectō.
unexpectedly, improvīsō, *or* dē improvīsō.

Digitized by Google

Idioms

bring aid, auxilium ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *with dat.*
treat with, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *with* cum *and abl.*

VOCABULARY XXVI

Nouns

accident, cāsus, -ūs, *m.*
citizenship, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*
close friend, necessārius, -ī, *m.*
kinsman, cōnsanguineus, -ī, *m.*
sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*
slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, *f.*

Pronoun

which of two, uter, utra, utrum, *gen.* utrīus, *rel. and interr.*

Adjectives

encumbered, impedītus, -a, -um.
mere, ipse, -a, -um, *gen.* ipsīus.
private, prīvātus, -a, -um.
public, pūblicus, -a, -um.
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.
twenty, vīgintī, *indecl.*

Verbs

attack, aggredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
avenge, ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum.
cut down, concīdo, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum.
deserve, mereor, -ērī, meritus sum.
halt, cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum.
look for, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
make up one's mind, statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtum.
take care, cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
trust, intrust, mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc. and dat.*
waste, cōnsumō, -ere, -sūmpsi, -sūmptum.

Adverb

almost, paene.

Preposition

except, praeter, *with acc.*

Idiom

what is left, quid est reliquī.

VOCABULARY XXVII

Nouns

column, (*marching army*), agmen, -minis, *n.*
hill, collis, -is, *m.*
torture, cruciātus, -ūs, *m.*

Adjectives

extreme, summus, -a, -um.
fifteen, quīndecim, *indecl.*
safe, uninjured, incolumis, -e.
so great, tantus, -a, -um.

Verbs

admire, admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
ask (*inquire*), quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *with* ab, ex, *or* dē *and abl. of person interrogated.*
avoid, vītō, -āre, āvī, -ātum.
be sorrowful, doleō, -ere, -uī.
be well, valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
complain, queror, -ī, questus sum.
fall, cado, -ere, cecidī, cāsum.
escape, effugiō, -ere, -fūgī.
labor, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
learn, ascertain, cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
send in advance, praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
stand, *perf. of* cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *which in pres. means "take one's stand."*

Conjunctions

but if, sīn.
if, sī.
if not, unless, nisi.
whether . . . or, sīve . . . sīve, *or* seu . . . seu. *Before a vowel or* h *the form* sīve *should be used.*

Idioms

begin battle, proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
dangerous ground, locus aliēnus, locī aliēnī, *m.*
take under one's protection, in fidem recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
run away, terga vertō, -ere, vertī, versum (*literally, "turn their backs"*).

VOCABULARY XXVIII

Nouns

change, commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
crops, frūmenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.* (*only applicable to grain*).

Digitized by Google

disgrace, contumēlia, -ae, *f.*
fear, timor, -ōris, *m.*
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
line of march, iter, itineris, *n.*
victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*

Adjectives

five (at a time), quīnī, ae, -a, *distributive.*
recent, new, recēns, -entis.
ripe, mātūrus, -a, -um.

Verbs

attack, provoke, lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
bring together, comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
crush, opprimō,-ere, -pressī, -pressum.
demand (*insistently*), flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
experience grief, *see* **be sorrowful**, *voc. xxvii.*
gather, cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
harass, vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
lay aside, dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
perceive, sentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum.
realize, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
strive, *see* **struggle**, *voc. xii.*
try, temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
turn away, āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
survive, supersum, -esse, -fuī, *with dat.*

Adverbs

in the meantime, interim.
now and then, interdum.
O that, would that, utinam; *neg.* nē.
so, tam.
valiantly, fortiter.

Conjunction

provided that, so long as, dum.

Idioms

pitch camp, castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.
rear guard, novissimum agmen, novissimī agminis, *n.*
try to force a march, iter per vim temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
van, vanguard, prīmum agmen, prīmī agminis, *n.*

VOCABULARY XXIX

Nouns

domination, command, imperium, -i, *n.*
meeting, conventus, -ūs, *m.*
mother, māter, mātris, *f.*
power, potestās, -tātis, *f.*
prayer, (prex, precis), *f.*; *usually in pl.; nom. sing not found.*
price, pretium, -ī, *n.*
quantity, a, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
will, voluntās, -tātis, *f.*

Adjectives

how great, how important, quantus, -a, -um.
near, propinquus, -a, -um.
true, vērus, -a, -um.

Verbs

agree upon, *see* **settle**, *voc. xxiii.*
be at hand, īnsto, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum.
buy, emō, -ere, ēmī, emptum.
call together, convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
demand, postulō, -āre, āvī, -ātum.
dismiss, dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
endure, perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
expect, hope, spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
find, reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum.
hold, obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
increase, augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum.
influence, addūcō,-ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
lease, redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum.
reproach, incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
restore, restituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum.
retain, retineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
reveal, set before, prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
talk, loquor, -ī, locūtus sum.
understand, *see* **realize**, *voc. xxviii.*

Adverbs

now, iam.
severely, graviter.

Preposition

against, contrā, *with acc.*

Idioms

be very powerful *or* **influential**, largiter possum, posse, potuī.

Digitized by Google

then and only then, then finally, tum dēmum.

VOCABULARY XXX

Nouns

affection, love, amor, -ōris, *m.*
consent, *see* **will,** *voc. xxix.*
favor, grātia, -ae, *f.*
justice, iūstitia, -ae, *f.*
office, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
populace, vulgus, -ī, *n.*
skirmish, proelium, -ī, *n.*
tear, lacrima, -ae, *f.*
wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*
word, verbum, -ī, *n.*

Adjectives

brotherly, frāternus, -a, -um.
uncommon, ēgregius, -a, -um.
unsuccessful (*of an enterprise*), adversus, -a, -um.

Verbs

attain to, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
attempt, try, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
beseech, precor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
decide, *see* **make up one's mind,** *voc. xxvi.*
embrace, complector, -ī, -plexus sum.
entreat, ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
favor, *see* **take one's side,** *voc. vii.*
lessen, minuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum.
show, ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
weep, fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum.

Adverb

privately, prīvātim.

Idioms

for the future, in reliquum tempus.
provide for the punishment of, animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, *with* in *and acc.*
summon, ad mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

VOCABULARY XXXI

Nouns

conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
flank, latus, -eris, *n.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
lack, inopia, -ae, *f.*
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
longing, cupiditās, -tātis, *f.*
signal, sīgnum, -ī, *n.*
surrender, dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
three days (*period of*), trīduum, -ī, *n.*

Adjectives

eager, *pres. part. of* cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
fourteen, quattuordecim, *indecl.*
three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.
triple, triplex, -icis.
unprotected, apertus, -a, -um.

Verbs

await, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
behold, cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
cast at, prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *with* ad *and acc.*
draw up, īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum.
encounter, congredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
end (*of a war*), cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
go up, succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
harangue, cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
intervene, pass (*of intervals of time*), *pass. of* intermittō -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
invite in, adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
press forward, īnstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātum.
remove, removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
request, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
surround, circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.

Adverb

eagerly, cupidē.

Preposition

in front of, prō, *with abl.*

Idioms

at full gallop, equō admissō.
join battle, *see* **begin battle,** *voc. xxvii.*
panic stricken, timōre perterritus, -a, -um.
retreat, fall back, mē, tē, sē, *etc.* recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

Digitized by Google

unfavorable ground, *see* **dangerous ground**, *voc. xxvii.*

VOCABULARY XXXII

Nouns

alarm, *see* **fear**, *voc. xxxvii.*
Briton, Britannus, -ī, *m.*
circumference, circuitus, -ūs, *m.*
dry ground, āridum, -i, *n.*
leader (*political*), prīnceps, -cipis, *m.*
mind, animus, -i, *m.*
official, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*
palisade, vāllum, -ī, *n.*
phalanx, phalanx, -angis, *f.*
praise, laus, laudis, *f.*
prisoner, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
rush, *see* **attack**, *voc. x.*

Adjectives

dead, *perf. part. of* morior, morī, mortuus sum.
eight, octō, *indecl.*
headlong, praeceps, -cipis.
settled, *perf. pass. part. of* īnstituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum.

Verbs

capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
deter, deterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
direct, *see* **command**, *voc. xix.*
find out, *see* **find**, *voc. xxix.*
fling, prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
gain one's point, *see* **gain a request**, *voc. xxiv.*
happen, accidit, -ere, -cidit, *impers.*
hurl back, reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
inquire, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
lead back, redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
lead up, subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
make haste, mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
seem, *pass. of* videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.
start, *see* **set out**, *voc. iv.*
take up one's position (*of an army*), cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum.

Adverbs

afterwards, posteā.
thus, sīc.

Prepositions

at (*towards*), ad, *with acc.*
at the foot of, sub, *with abl.*

Conjunctions

after, postquam.
as soon as, ubi; cum primum.
at a time when, when, whenever, cum.
however, autem, *postpositive.*
the moment that, cum primum.

Idioms

be very influential, plūrimum possum, posse, potui.
by my, your, his, *etc.*, **own efforts**, meā, tuā, suā, *etc.*, sponte.
face about, iter convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
get over, recover from, mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *with* ex *and abl.*
go nearer to, propius accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *with acc.*
hold assizes, conventūs agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
in close array, cōnfertissimā aciē, *abl. f.*
put to flight, in fugam dō, dare, dedī, dātum.
return to, mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *with* ad *and acc.*

VOCABULARY XXXIII

Nouns

age, aetās, -tātis, f.
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
interests, rēs, reī, *f.*
interval, intervāllum, -ī, *n.*
man, (*human being*), homō, hominis, *m. and f.*; (*male*), vir, virī, *m.*

Pronouns

myself, yourself, *etc.* *For the reflexive pronouns of the first and second person, use the proper cases of the personal pronouns,* ego, tū, *etc. The reflexive of the third person is* suī.

Adjectives

barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um.
common, commūnis, -e.

Digitized by Google

left, sinister, -tra, -trum.
spent, exhausted, *perf. pass. part. of* cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
twofold, anceps, -cipitis.
untroubled, aequus, -a, -um.
useful, ūtilis, -e.
wild, ferus, -a, -um.

Verbs

ascertain, cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.
be accustomed, *perf. of* cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum.
bear (*carry, endure*), ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
beat, conquer, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
divert, āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
encounter (*in conflict*), congredior, -ī, -gressus sum.
expose, obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *with acc. and dat.*
feel sure, cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, *semi-dep.*
fill, compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum.
form, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
get the upper hand, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
let go, ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
prepare for, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
risk, temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
toss about, iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Adverbs

at the same time, simul.
for a long while, long, diū.
graciously, līberāliter.
next, thereupon, deinde.

Preposition

away from, ab, *with abl.*

Conjunctions

as for the fact that, because, quod.
but if, quod sī.
inasmuch as, quoniam.
since, cum.
until, dum.

Idioms

advance, (*to an attack*), sīgna īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
show gratitude, grātiam referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
strive to reach, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, *with* ad *and acc.*
there is the additional circumstance that; there is the added fact *or* reason that, accēdit quod.

VOCABULARY XXXIV

Nouns

affair, rēs, reī, *f.*
difficulty, difficultās, -tātis, *f.*
risk, *see* **danger**, *voc. iv.*

Adjectives

advantageous, opportūnus, -a, -um.
prosperous, *pres. part. of* flōreō, -ēre, -uī.
sixty, sexāgintā, *indecl.*
suppliantly, supplex, -icis (*adj. where English uses adv.*).

Verbs

be presented (*appear*), *pass. of* prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
be unoccupied, vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
complete, perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
flee, profugiō, -ere, -fūgī.
demand, poscō, -ere, poposcī.
depart, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
desert, deserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum.
determine, *see* **settle**, *voc. xxiii.*
go back, redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
hand over, trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
observe, animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
prolong, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
send for, arcessō, -ere, arcessīvī, arcessītum.
upbraid, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

Adverbs

by name, definitely, nōminātim.
by night, noctū.
yet, nevertheless, tamen.

Conjunction

although; though, cum; etsī; tametsī.

Idioms

from day to day, in diēs (*acc.*).
keep in camp, castrīs contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

Digitized by Google

make a reckoning, ratiōnem cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
midsummer, media aestās, mediae aestātis, *f.*
not any longer, no longer, nōn iam.
rest on, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, *with* in *and abl.*

VOCABULARY XXXV

Nouns

beck, nūtus, -ūs, *m.*
behest; sway, imperium, -ī, *n.*
business, negōtium, *-i, n.*
conference, colloquium, -ī, *n.*
custom, cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, *f.*
hospitality, hospitium, -ī, *n.*
human being, *see* **man**, *voc. xxxiii.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
lot, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
revenue, stīpendium, -i, *n.*

Pronoun

whoever, whatever, quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef.*

Verbs

allow, committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
beseech, implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
compare, comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
conclude, cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.
dictate, praescrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scriptum.
encounter, (*of circumstances*), occurrō, -ere, -currī (*or* -cucurrī), -cursum, *with dat.*
endure, sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
experience, experior, -īrī, expertus sum.
grant, permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
invite, invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
make plain, *see* **show**, *voc. xxx.*
object, gravor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
pay, pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum.
take away, adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum.
visit on, ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *with* in *and acc.*

Adverbs

agreeably to, *use the abl.*
arrogantly, superbē.
as follows, ita.
besides, praetereā.
permanently, perpetuō.
rapidly, *see* **quickly**, *voc. xiv.*
rather than, quam.

Conjunctions

as soon as ever, cum prīmum.
moreover, autem, *postpositive.*

Idioms

inflict punishment, supplicium sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *with* dē *and abl.*
manner of life, cōnsuētūdō, -dinis (*f.*) vītae.
thank, grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *with dat.*

VOCABULARY XXXVI

Nouns

base (*of a mountain*), *pl. of* rādīx, -īcis, *f.* (*literally*, "*roots*").
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*
sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.*
stone, lapis, -idis, *m.*

Pronoun

each (*of two*), uterque, -traque, -trumque, *gen.* utrīusque.

Adjectives

fifty, quīnquāgintā, *indecl.*
more, plūs, plūris (*in sing. only used as a neuter subst. with the gen.*).
powerful, potēns, -entis.

Verbs

advance, go on, prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
approach, accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cēssum, *with* ad *or* in *and acc.*
ascend, ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum.
assail, lacessō, -ere, lacessīvī, lacessītum.
collect, cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
come together, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
concentrate, cōntrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum.
connect, coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum.

Digitized by Google

disconcert, perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
drive, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
encircle, cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctum.
extend (*of building a wall*), perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
hold out, withstand, sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
intervene, intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
think, exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
throw, cōniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.
wait, *see* **await**, *voc. xxxi.*
neglect, neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.

Adverb

gradually, paulātim.

Preposition

in the neighborhood of, ad, *with acc.*

Conjunctions

before, priusquam.
as long as; so long as (*in clauses of proviso*), dum.
while, dum.

Idioms

be added to, accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *with* ad *and acc.*
become worse (*of revenues*), dēterior fīō, fierī, factus sum.
in a wonderful way, mīrum in modum.
recover from, *see* **get over**, *voc. xxxii.*
unite, mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *with* cum *and abl.*

VOCABULARY XXXVII

Nouns

centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*
cohort, cohors, -hortis, *f.*
feint, simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
greed, avāritia, -ae, *f.*
port, portus, -ūs, *m.*
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
wind, ventus, -ī, *m.*
wish, *see* **will**, *voc. xxix.*

Adjectives

cowardly, timidus, -a, -um.
six hundred, sescentī, -ae, -a.
unarmed, inermis, -e.

Verbs

arm, armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
become acquainted with (*by observation*), perspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, spectum.
doubt, dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. (*Cf.* **hesitate**, *voc. xix.*)
fail in one's duty, dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with dat.*
hold, teneō, -ēre, tenuī.
make up, invent, fingō, -ere, fīnxī, fictum.
question, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
refuse, recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
remain, remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum.
restrain, temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with dat.*
scatter, dispergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersum.
throw into disorder, perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
urge on, impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.

Conjunctions

but (*in clauses after negs., as "there is no one but"*), quīn.
or (*in interr. sentences*), an.
that (*after neg. expressions of doubt*), quīn.
that not (*in clauses of result and characteristic following a neg.*), quīn.
whether . . . or, (*interr.*), utrum . . . an.

Idioms

pay a penalty, poenās pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum.
preserve formation, ōrdinēs servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
there is no doubt that, nōn est dubium quīn.
warship, nāvis longa, nāvis longae, *f.*

VOCABULARY XXXVIII

Nouns

access, aditus, -ūs, *m.*
damage, dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*
effort, labor, -ōris, *m.*

Digitized by Google

hillock, tumulus, -ī, *m.*
pretext, *see* **reason**, *voc. xxii.*
prize, praemium, -ī, *n.*
prowess, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.* (*Cf.* **courage**, *voc. iv.*)
recollection, memoria, -ae, *f.*

Adjectives

fit, *see* **suitable**, *voc. ix.*
legionary, legiōnārius, -a, -um.
ready, *perf. pass. part.* of parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.

Verbs

achieve, win, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
allege, interpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
ask one's advice, cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultum, *with acc. of person consulted.*
break up (*of an assemblage*), tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
bring, adferō, -ferre, attulī, adlātum.
fight to a finish, dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
give out, proclaim, prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
instill, iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *with acc. of thing and dat. of person.*
launch, dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
mount, impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *with acc. and dat.*
reduce, redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *with* ad *and acc.*
send back, remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
show, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, *with two acc.*
suspect, suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
take thought for, cōnsulō, -cre, -sului, -sultum, *with dat.*
withdraw (*trans.*), dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum.

Adverbs

at once, statim.
certainly, certē.
of one's own accord, voluntarily, ultrō.
only, sōlum.

Idiom

deserve, be worthy of, dignus sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *with rel. clause in the subj.*

VOCABULARY XXXIX

Nouns

appearance, speciēs, -ēī, *f.*
enthusiasm, studium, -ī, *n.*
familiarity, cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, *f.*
fighting, pugna, -ae, *f.*
infantryman, pedes, -ditis, *m.*
kind, genus, -eris, *n.*
lot, sors, sortis, *f.*
speed (*running*), cursus, -ūs, *m.*
tongue, language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
youth, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*

Adjectives

hard, dūrus, -a, -um.
in succession, successive, continuus, -a, -um.
just as many, totidem, *indecl.*
swift, velōx, -ōcis.

Verbs

behold, cōnspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum.
cry out, conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
equal, adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
feel pained, *see* **be sorrowful**, *voc. xxvii.*
give notice, nūntiō, -āre, āvī, -ātum.
lead forth, prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
live among, versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *with* in *and abl.*
practice, exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
rush together, concurrō, -ere, -currī (*or* -cucurrī), -cursum.

Adverb

why? quid? (*interr.*).

Preposition

beyond, ultrā, *with acc.*

Idiom

encamp, castra faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY XL

Nouns

quaestor, quaestor, -ōris, *m.*
uproar, strepitus, -ūs, *m.*
weather, tempestās, -tātis, *f.*
wing (*of an army*), cornū, -ūs, *n.* (*literally*, "*horn*").

Adjectives

absent, absēns, -entis (*pres. part. of* absum).
frequent, crēber, -bra, -brum.
right, dexter, -tra, -trum, *and* -tera, -terum.
three at a time, ternī, -ae, -a.
outstretched, *perf. pass. part. of* pandō, -ere, pandī, passum.

Verbs

agree, cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum.
banish, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
beg for, implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be present, adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
bind, vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctum.
enter upon (*of a plan*), ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
kill, necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
meet with, nancīscor, -ī, nanctus *and* nactus sum.
oppress, *see* **crush**, *voc. xxviii.*
receive (*of a charge*), excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
run down, dēcurrō, -ere, -currī (*or* -cucurrī), -cursum.

Adverbs

above, suprā.
face to face, cōram. (*Also prep. with abl.*)
in vain, frūstrā.
thrice, ter.

Conjunctions

as, ut.
as if; **as though**, velut; velut sī.

Idiom

It is pretty certain, satis cōnstat.

VOCABULARY XLI

Nouns

anchor, ancora, -ae, *f.*
assault, besieging, oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
assistance, services, opera, -ae, *f.*
cable, fūnis, -is, *m.*
cliff, rūpēs, -is, *f.*
conflict, pugna, -ae, *f.*
delay, mora, -ae, *f.*
departure, discessus, -ūs, *m.*; (*setting forth*), profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*
fleet, classis, -is, *f.*
hide, pellis, -is, *f.*
load, onus, -eris, *n.*
mound, agger, -eris, *m.*
oak, robur, roboris, *n.*
opportunity, occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*
oration, speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
outcome, result, ēventus, -ūs, *m.*
pass, iter, itineris, *n.*
pilot, gubernātor, -ōris, *m.*
rampart, vāllum, -ī, *n.*
rout, fuga, -ae, *f.*
sail, vēlum, -ī, *n.*
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
shed (*military*), vīnea, -ae, *f.*
testudo, testūdō, -dinis, *f.*
tide, aestus, -ūs, *m.*
wave, fluctus, -ūs, *m.*
weight, pondus, -eris, *n.*
wine, vīnum, -ī, *n.*

Pronoun

what you will, quīvis, quaevis, quodvis.

Adjectives

Cisalpine, citerior, -ius (*literally*, "*hither*").
clever, callidus, -a, -um.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
empty, vacuus, -a, -um.
facing, contrārius, -a, -um.
first, (*of two*), prior, prius (*comp.*); (*of more than two*), prīmus, -a, -um (*sup.*).
infantry, pedester, -tris, -tre.
light, levis, -e.
neither, neuter, -tra, -trum (*pronominal adj.*).

Digitized by Google

ninth, nōnus, -a, -um.
out of breath, *perf. pass. part. of* exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
shallow, flat, plānus, -a, -um.
skilled, perītus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
slow, tardus, -a, -um.
thick, dēnsus, -a, -um.
varying, varius, -a, -um.
wounded, saucius, -a, -um.

Verbs

attend to, administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
bear away, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
be hard pressed, *pass. of* urgeō, -ēre, ursī.
be in difficulty, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be in want of, careō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with abl.*
build, aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
build up, exstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum.
call upon, cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
carry down, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
come down, dēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
consider, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
fail, dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with acc.*
feel ashamed, *see* **be ashamed**, *voc. xvii.*
fit on, accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
force (*from a position*), compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
hasten, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
hide, lateō, -ere, -uī (*intrans.*).
interpose, interpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
inspire, *see* **instill**, *voc. xxxviii.*
know, *perf. of* nōscō -ere, nōvī, nōtum.
lean forward, prōcumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitum.
look back, respiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum.
make provision, prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum.
present, (*furnish, afford*), praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; (*of an opportunity*), offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum.
put before, praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with acc. and dat.*
repair, reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.
recall, revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sell, vendō, -dere, -didī, ditum. *Instead of the pass., use* vēneō, -īre, -iī.
stop, cease, intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
suffer, patior, -ī, passus sum.
take by storm, expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
tarry, cunctor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
trust, cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum, *semi-dep.*
try to find out, investigate, explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
trouble. perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
weigh anchor, solvō, -ere, -ī, solūtum.

Adverbs

a little (*of extent*), paulum.
everywhere, ubīque.
for a little while, paulisper.
industriously, dīligenter.
on the previous day, prīdiē.
secretly, clam.
so, adeō.
with all speed, cōnfēstim.
too little, parum. *Also used as indecl. neuter subst.*

Idioms

address in a gracious speech, līberāliter prōsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
by land and sea, terrā marīque.
deliver *or* **make a speech**, ōrātiōnem habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
heights, loca superiōra, locōrum superiōrum, *n. pl.*
make the greatest effort, maximē labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
military science, rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris, *f.*
on guard, in statiōne.
patriotic, patriae amāns, -antis.
seacoast, ōra maritima, ōrae maritimae, *f.*
withdraw from battle, pugnā excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY

A

able, be, possum, posse, potuī.
abolish, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
about, (*around*), circum, *with acc.;* (*concerning*), dē, *with abl.:* (*adv.*), circiter; (*with numerals*), circiter, *with acc.*
above, *adv.*, suprā.
absent, absēns, absentis, *part. of* absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
abstain, temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
accept, accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
access, aditus, -ūs, *m.*
accident, cāsus, -ūs, *m.* [-fectum.
accomplish, cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī,
(accord), of my, your, his, *etc.*, **own accord,** meā, tuā, suā, *etc.*, sponte.
accordingly, itaque.
accuse, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
achieve, cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum.
across, trāns, *prep. with acc.*
added, be, accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
address in a gracious speech, līberāliter prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum.
admire, admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
adopt, ad mē (tē, sē, *etc.*) recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
advance, (*on a journey*), prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum; prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum; (*to an attack*), sīgna īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
advantage, commodum, -ī, *n.*
advantageous, opportūnus, -a, -um.
adversity, rēs adversae, rērum adversārum, *f. pl.*
advise, moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitum.
Aedui, Aeduī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
affair, rēs, reī, *f.*
affection, amor, -ōris, *m.*
Africa, Āfrica, -ae, *f.*
after, (*prep.*), post, *with acc.;* (*conj.*), postquam; posteāquam.
afterwards, posteā.
again, iterum; rursus.
against, contrā, *prep. with acc.; with verbs of contending,* cum, *prep. with abl.*
age, aetās, -tātis, *f.*
agree, cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum.
agreeably to, *express by abl.*
agree upon, cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum.
aid, auxilium, -ī, *n.*
alarm (*verb*), (= *disturb*), commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum; (= *thoroughly frighten*), perterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territum.
alarm (*subst.*), timor, -ōris, *m.*
a little (*adv. denoting extent*), paulum.
all, omnis, -e.
allege, interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum.
allow, (*suffer*), patior, patī, passus sum; (*make the mistake of allowing*), committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum.
ally, socius, -i, *m.*

Digitized by Google

almost, ferē; paene.
alone, (*adj.*), sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* sōlīus; (*adv.*), sōlum.
already, iam.
also, quoque (*postpositive*); etiam.
although, etsī, tametsī.
always, semper.
Ambarri, Ambarrī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
ambassador, see **envoy.**
ambuscade, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
among, (*particularly with the idea of association*), apud, *prep. with acc.;* (*of locality*), inter, *prep. with acc.*
anchor, ancora, -ae, *f.*
ancient, prīstinus, -a, -um.
and, (*simply connecting*), et; (*connecting words closely related*), -que, *enclitic;* (*emphasizing what follows*), atque, ac (ac *never before a vowel*).
and not, neque; nec; (*introducing a final clause*), nēve; neu. *Before a vowel only the forms* neque *and* nēve *may be used.*
and so, itaque.
announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
another, alius, -a, -ud. *Instead of the gen.* alīus, *use either the adj.* aliēnus *in agreement with the modified word, or* alterius, *the gen. of* alter.
answer, respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōnsum.
any, ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* ūllīus.
any one, anything, (*in neg. clauses*), quisquam, quicquam; (*after* sī, nisi, nē, num), quis, quid.
appearance, speciēs, -ēī, *f.*
appoint, (*especially by election*), creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*select*), dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
approach, (*go to*), accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum; (*draw near*), appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with dat.*
approve of, probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*
arm, armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*
arouse, incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
arrive at, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* ad *and acc., or acc. alone of such words as* domus, rūs, *names of towns, etc.*
arrogantly, superbē.
as, ut, *conj.*
as . . . as possible, quam *with the superlative.*
ascend, ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum.
ascertain, cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.
as follows, ita.
as for the fact that, quod.
ashamed, be, pudet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., with acc. of person and gen. of thing.*
Asia, Asia, -ae, *f.*
as if, velut; velutsī.
ask, ask for, rogo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with two acc.;* quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *with* ab *and abl.;* petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum, *with* ab *and abl.*
ask one's advice, cōnsulō, -ere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultum, *with acc. of the person consulted.*
as long as, (*temporal*), dum; quam diū; (*proviso*), dum.
assail, lacessō, -ere, lacessīvī, lacessītum.
assault, oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
assign, distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum.
assistance (*services*), opera, -ae, *f.*

Digitized by Google

assizes, to hold, conventūs agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
as soon as, ubi; cum prīmum.
as soon as ever, cum prīmum.
as though, velut, velutsī.
at, (*towards*), in, *prep. with acc.;* (*of location*), in, *prep. with abl.; or locative;* (*of time*), *abl.*
at a time when (*of definite date*), cum *with ind.*
at full gallop, equō admissō (*abl. abs.*).
at hand, be, īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum.
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
at last, dēmum.
at least, quidem (*postpositive*).
at length, tandem.
at once, statim.
attack, (*verb*), (*charge on*), impetum faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, *with* in *and acc.;* (*challenge, provoke*), lacessō, -ere, lacessīvī, lacessītum; (*rise up against, often used of sudden and unexpected attacks*), adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum; (*move forward against*), aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum.
attack (*subst.*), impetus, -ūs, *m.*
attain to, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
attempt, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
attend to, administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
at the foot of, sub, *prep. with abl.*
at the same time, simul.
at this time, at that time, id temporis.
at times, nōn numquam; interdum.
audacity, audācitās, -tātis, *f.*
authority, auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*
avenge, ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum.
avoid, vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
await, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
away from, ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*

B

back, tergum, -ī, *n.*
bad, malus, -a, -um.
badge, īnsīgne, -is, *n.*
baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
banish, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *with* ex *and abl., or abl. alone.*
bank, rīpa, -ae, *f.*
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*
barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um.
base (*of a mountain*), *pl. of* rādīx, -īcis, *f.* (*lit.* "*root*").
battle, proelium, -ī, *n.;* pugna, -ae, *f.*
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
be able, possum, posse, potuī.
be accustomed, *perf. of* cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum.
be added, accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *with* ad *and acc.*
be afraid, *see* **fear.**
bear, (*arms, etc.*), gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum; (*carry, endure*), ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
bear away, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
be ashamed, pudet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., with acc. of person and gen. of thing.*
beat (*conquer*), superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.
be at hand, īnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum.
be away, be distant, absum, -esse, āfuī.
because, quod.
because of, (1) ob *or* propter, *preps. with acc.;* (2) *abl. of cause.*
beck, nūtus, -ūs, *m.*
become, fīō, fierī, factus sum.
become acquainted, *see* **ascertain.**
become master(s) of, pōtior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *with abl.*
be descended, orior, -īrī, ortus sum.
be eager for, studeō, -ēre, -uī, *with dat.*

Digitized by Google

befall, see **happen**.
before, (*adv.*), ante; anteā; (*prep. with acc.*), ante; (*prep. with abl.*), prō; (*conj.*), priusquam.
beg for, petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum; (*entreat*), implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
begin, incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum; **began**, coepī, coepisse; (*with pass. inf.*), coeptus sum.
beginning, initium, -ī, *n.*
be hard pressed, *pass. of* urgeō, -ēre, ursī.
behest, imperium, -ī, *n.*
behold, cōnspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum; cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
be in command *or* **charge of**, praesum, -esse, -fuī, *with dat.*
be in difficulty, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be indulgent to, indulgeō, -ēre, -dulsī, -dultum.
be in the habit of, *perf. of* cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum.
be in want of, careō, -ere, -uī, *with abl.*
Belgian, Belga, -ae, *m.*
believe, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *with dat.*
belonging to, *use the gen.*
be permitted, licet, -ēre, -uit, *impers.*
be present, adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
be presented (*appear*), *pass. of* prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
beseech, implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; precor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
besides, praetereā.
besieging, oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
be sorrowful, doleō, -ēre, -uī.
be tired of, taedet, -ēre, *impers.*, *with acc. of person and gen. of thing.*
between, inter, *prep. with acc.*
be unable, nōn possum, posse, potuī.
be unoccupied, vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
be very influential; **be very powerful**, plūrimum possum, posse, potuī: largiter possum, posse, potuī.
beware, caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum.
be well, valeō, -ēre, -uī.
be without, careō, -ēre, -uī, *with abl.*
beyond, ūltrā, *prep. with acc.*
bind, vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctum.
body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
Boii, Boiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
bold, audāx, -ācis.
boldness, audācia, -ae, *f.*
border, fīnis, -is, *m.*
both, uterque, utraque, utrumque, *gen.* utrīusque.
both . . . and, et . . . et.
bound, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
boundary, see **border**.
boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
branch, rāmus, -ī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
breadth, lātitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
break up (*of a meeting*), tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; **bring to**, adferō, adferre, attulī, adlātum.
bring against, īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with acc. and dat.*
bring aid, auxilium ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *with dat.*
bring back word, renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
bring to an end (*of war*), cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
bring together, (*by leading*), condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum; (*by carrying*), comportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
bring to pass, efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.

Digitized by Google

Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
Briton, Britannus, -ī, *m.*
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
brotherly, frāternus, -a, -um.
build, aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
building, aedificium, -ī, *n.*
build up, exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -structum.
burn, incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsum.
business, negōtium, -ī, *n.*
but, autem (*postpositive*); sed; (*after such negative expressions as "there is no one but"*), quīn.
but if, sīn; quod sī.
buy, emō, -ere, ēmī, emptum.
by, ab *with abl.; abl. alone, etc.*
by his own efforts, suā sponte.
by land and sea, terrā marīque.
by name, nōminātim.
by night, noctū.

C

cable, fūnis, -is, *m.*
Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
calamity, calamitās, -tātis, *f.*
call, appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
call together, convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
call upon, cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
can, possum, posse, potuī.
captive, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
carry down, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
carry on, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
cart, carrus, -ī, *m.*
Carthage, Karthāgō, -ginis, *f.*
cast at, prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *with* ad *and acc.*
cast down, dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum.
Cassius, Cassius, -ī, *m.*
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.; or use the pl. of* **horseman,** eques, -itis, *m.*
cease, dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, *with abl. or inf.*
Celt, Celta, -ae, *m.*
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*
certain, a, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *gen.* cūiusdam.
certainly, certē.
chain, catēna, -ae, *f.*
chance, potestās, -tātis, *f.*
change, commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
charge, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
chase, persequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum.
check, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
chief, *adj.*, prīnceps, -cipis; *also used as m. subst.*
chief command, imperium, -ī, *n.*
children, puerī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*; (*of free parents*), līberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
choose, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
circumference, circuitus, -ūs, *m.*
Cisalpine, citerior, -ōris (*lit.* "*hither*").
citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.*
citizenship, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
clan, pāgus, -ī, *m.*
clever, callidus, -a, -um.
cliff, rūpēs, -is, *f.*
climb, ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum.
close friend, necessārius, -ī, *m.*
cohort, cohors, -hortis, *f.*
collect, cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
column (*marching army*), agmen, -minis, *n.*
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.
come down, dēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.

Digitized by Google

come out, ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum.
come together, conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
command, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with dat. and final clause;* iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, *with acc. and inf.*
commander, dux, ducis, *m.;* imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
commit (*do*), faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.
common, commūnis, -e.
compare, comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
compel, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.
complain, queror, querī, questus sum.
complete, perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
comrade, socius, -ī, *m.*
conceal, cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
concede, concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
concentrate, contrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum.
conclude (*decide*), statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum.
condemn, damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
conference, conloquium, -ī, *n.*
confined, angustus, -a, -um.
conflict, pugna, -ae, *f.*
connect, iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum; coniungō, -ere, *etc.*
conquer, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
consent, voluntās, -tātis, *f.*
consider, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
conspire, coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
construct (*a wall*), perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
consul, cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*
contend, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
contest, certāmen, -minis, *n.*
contrary to, see **against**.
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, *f.*
council, concilium, -ī, *n.*
country, (*as opposed to the city*), rūs, rūris, *n.;* (*native land*), patria, -ae, *f.;* (*territory*), fīnēs, -ium, *m. pl.;* (*geographical division*), terra, -ae, *f.*
courage, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
courageous, fortis, -e.
cowardly, timidus, -a, -um.
crime, scelus, -eris, *n.*
crops, *pl. of* frumentum, -ī, *n.*
cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
crush, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.
cry out, conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
custom, (*characteristic*), mōs, mōris, *m.;* (*habit*), cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, *f.*
cut down, caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum; concīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cisum.
cut off, interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum.

D

daily (*adv.*), cotīdiē.
daily, of daily occurrence (*adj.*), cotīdiānus, -a, -um.
damage, dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*
danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
dangerous ground, locus aliēnus, locī aliēnī, *m.*
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *semi-deponent.*
daring (*subst.*), audācitās, -tatis, *f.*
dawn, at, prīmā lūce.
day, diēs, -ēi, *in sing., m. or f.; in pl., always m.*
day before, on the, prīdiē.
daybreak, at, prīmā lūce.
daylight, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
dead, *perf. part. of* morior, morī, mortuus sum.
death, mors, mortis, *f.*

Digitized by Google

deceive, dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
decide statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defend, (*by fighting*), dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum; (*by fortifying*), mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
defender, dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.*
defile (*ravine*), angustiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
delay, mora, -ae, *f.*
delight, dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
deliver (*of a speech*), habeō, -ere, -uī, -itum.
demand, poscō, -ere, -poposcī; (*as a right*), postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*insistently*), flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
denude, nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
depart, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
departure, discessus, -ūs, *m.*; (*setting forth*), profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*
deprive, prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
descended, be, orior, -īrī, ortus sum.
desert, dēserō, -ere, dēseruī, dēsertum.
deserve, mereor, -ērī, -itus sum; (*be worthy to . . .*), dignus sum, *with rel. clause in subj.*
desire, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um.
desist, dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, *with abl. of separation, or inf.*
despair, dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
despise, dēspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectum.
deter, dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
determine, cōnstituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum.
devote, dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
dictate, praescrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum.
differ, differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum.
difficulty, difficultās, -tātis, *f.*
direct, iubeō, -ere, iussī, iussum.
direction, pars, partis, *f.*
disaster, calamitās, -tātis, *f.*
disclose, ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
disconcert, perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
disgrace, contumēlia, -ae, *f.*
dismiss, dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
display, ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
distance, spatium, -ī, *n.*; **for a little distance,** paulum spatī.
distant, most, ūltimus, -a, -um.
ditch, fossa, -ae, *f.*
divert, āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
Diviciacus, Dīviciācus, -ī, *m.*
division, pars, partis, *f.*
do, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum; (*carry on*), agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
do harm, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with dat.*
domination, dominion, imperium, -ī, *n.*
double, duplex, -icis.
do wrong to, iniūriam īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with dat.*
drag, trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum.
draw up, īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum.
drive, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
drive back, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
dry ground, āridum, -ī, *n.*
Dumnorix, Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*

E

each, each one, (*of several*), quisque, quaeque, quidque, *and adj.* quodque; (*of two*), uterque, -traque, -trumque, *gen.* utrīusque.
eager, cupidus, -a, -um; (*in Ex. xxxi, 10*), *pres. part. of* cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
eagerly, cupidē.
earlier, superior, -ius.

Digitized by Google

early, mātūrē.
earthworks, vāllum, -ī, *n.*
easy, facilis, -e.
easily, facile.
east, oriēns, orientis, *m.*
effort, labor, -ōris, *m.*
Egypt, Aegyptus, -ī, *f.*
eight, octō.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
eighty, octōgintā.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut.
elder, māior nātū.
elect, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
else, *see* **other.**
embark on, cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum, *with acc. or* in *and acc.*
embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
embrace, complector, -ī, -plexus sum.
empty, vacuus, -a, -um. [factum.
encamp, castra faciō, facere, fēcī,
encircle (*with walls*), cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctum.
encounter, (*in battle*), congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum *with* cum *and abl.*; (*circumstances*), occurō, -ere, -currī (*or* -cucurrī), -cursum, *with dat.*
encumbered, impedītus, -a, -um.
end (*a war*), cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
end (*subst.*), fīnis, -is, *m.*
end of, extrēmus, -a, -um (*not with gen.*).
endure, perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum; sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
enemy, (*private*), inimīcus, -ī, *m.*; (*public*), hostis, -is, *m.*, *generally in pl.*
engage, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
enjoy, fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *with abl.*
enough, satis.
enter (*upon*), ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
enterprise, rēs, reī, *f.*
enthusiasm, studium, -ī, *n.*
entire, the, tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.* totīus.
entirely, omnīnō.
entreat, ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
entreaty, *see* **prayer.**
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
equal (*adj.*), pār, paris.
equal (*verb*), adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
escape, effugiō, -ere, effūgī, *with acc.*
especially, maximē.
establish, cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
even, etiam.
evening, vesper, vesperī, *m.*; **towards evening**, sub vesperum.
ever, umquam; (*always*), semper.
every, omnis, -e; **everything**, omnia.
every one, quisque, quaeque, quidque, *and subst.* quodque (*lit.* "*each*"); *or use pl. of* omnis.
everywhere, ubīque.
except, praeter, *prep. with acc.*
excite, permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.
exhausted, cōnfectus, -a, -um.
exhort, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
expect, spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
expedition, iter, itineris, *n.*
experience, experior, -īrī, expertus sum.
experienced, perītus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
experience grief, doleō, -ēre, -uī.
expose, obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *with acc. and dat.*
exposed, see **unprotected.**
extend, pateō, -ēre, -uī; pertineō, -ēre, -uī; (*of building a wall*), perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
extreme, summus, -a, -um.

Digitized by Google

F

face about, iter convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
face to face, cōram.
facing, contrārius, -a, -um.
fact, rēs, reī, *f.*
fail, dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with acc.*
fail in one's duty to, dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with dat.*
fall, cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum.
fall back (*retreat*), pedem referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
fall into, incidō, -ere, -cidī.
familiar with, perītus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
familiarity, cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, *f.*
far, longē.
farther (*adj.*), ūlterior, -ius.
father, pater, patris, *m.*
favor (*verb*), faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum.
favor (*subst.*), grātia, -ae, *f.*
fear (*verb*), timeō, -ēre, -uī; vereor, -ērī, -itus sum.
fear (*subst.*), timor, -ōris, *m.*
feel ashamed, pudet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., with acc. of the person and gen. of the thing.*
feel pained, doleō, -ere, -uī.
feel sure, cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, *semi-deponent.*
feint, simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre.
fiercely, ācriter.
fifteen, quīndecim.
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
fifty, quīnquāgintā.
fight (*verb*), contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum; dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
fighting, proelium, -ī, *n.*; pugna, -ae, *f.*
fight to a finish, dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
fill, compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum.
find, (*find out after search*), reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum; (*come upon*), inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.
find irksome, piget, -ēre, -uit, *impers., with acc. of the person and gen. of the thing.*
find out, see **find**.
finish, (*get through with*), peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctum; (*complete*), perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
fire, ignis, -is, *m.*
first, (*of two*), prior, prius; (*of more than two*), prīmus, -a, -um.
fit, idōneus, -a, -um.
fit on, accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
five, quīnque.
five at a time, quīnī, -ae, -a.
five hundred, quīngentī, -ae, -a.
flank, latus, -eris, *n.*
flee, fugiō, fugere, fūgī; (*flee forth*), profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī.
fleet, classis, -is, *f.*
flight, fuga, -ae, *f.*
fling, prōiciō, -īcere, -iēcī, -iectum.
flow, fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum.
foe, (*public*), hostis, -is, *m.*; (*private*), inimīcus, -ī, *m.*
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.
following, the ille, -a, -ud, *gen.* illīus.
foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
footsoldier, pedes, peditis, *m.*
for, (*prep.*), (*towards*), ad *or* in *with acc.*; (*in behalf or defence of*), prō *with abl.*; (*for the benefit of*), *use the dat.*

Digitized by Google

for (*conj.*), enim (*postpositive*); nam.
for a little while, paulisper.
for a long while, diū.
force (*verb*), cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum; (*force from a position*), compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
force (*subst.*), vīs, vīs, *f.*
force a march, try to, iter per vim temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
forced march, magnum iter, magnī itineris, *n.*
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
ford, vadum, -ī, *n.*
forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
forget, oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum, *with gen. or acc.*
form, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum; (*of a plan*), capiō, capere, cēpī, captum; ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
former, the, ille, -a, -ud, *gen.* illīus.
formerly, quondam.
for the reason that, propterea quod.
for the future, in reliquum tempus.
fortification, mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*
fortify, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
forty, quadrāgintā.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
four, quattuor.
four hundred, quadringentī, -ae, -a.
fourteen, quattuordecim.
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.
free, līber, -a, -um.
freedom, lībertās, -tātis, *f.*
frequent, crēber, crēbra, crēbrum.
frequently, saepe.
friend, amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um.
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, *f.*
fright, *see* **fear.**
from, ab; dē; ex; *preps. with abl.*
from all sides, from every side, undique.
from day to day, in diēs.
from every side, from all sides, undique.
from one another, inter sē.

G

gain (*win over*), conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
gain a request, gain one's point, impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
gain possession of, pōtior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *with abl.*
Gaius, Gāius, -ī, *m.*
Gallic, Gallicus, -a, -um.
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
gather, (*bring together*), cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum; (*make ready, as an army*), comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Gaul (*the country*), Gallia, -ae, *f.*
Gaul (*inhabitant of Gaul*), Gallus, -ī, *m.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*; imperātor, -ōris, *m.*
generally, plērumque.
Geneva, Genāva, -ae, *f.*
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
get over (*recover from*), mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum; *with* ex *and abl.*
get, get ready, parō *or* comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
get the upper hand, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
give back, reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
give notice, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
give out, prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
gladly, libenter.
go, eō, īre, iī, itum.
go back, redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
go from, discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum.

Digitized by Google

gold, (*subst.*), aurum, -ī, *n.*, (*adj.*) aureus, -a, -um.
go nearer, propius accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *with acc.*
good, bonus, -a, -um; *comp.* melior, -ius; *sup.* optimus, -a, -um.
good sense, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
go on, (*happen*), *pass. of* gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
go out, exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
go up, succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum.
govern, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum.
graciously, liberāliter.
gradually, paulātim.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
grain supply, rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, *f.*
grant, permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
great, magnus, -a, -um.
greatly, magnopere (*comp.* magis; *sup.* maximē); (*to express degree of concern*), magnī.
greatly alarm, perterreō, -ere, -uī, -itum.
greed, avāritia, -ae, *f.*
guest-friend, hospes, -itis, *m.*

H

halt, cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī.
hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
hand over, trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
happen, accidō, -ere, -cidī (*usually of misfortunes*).
harangue, cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
harass, vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
hard, dūrus, -a, -um.
harm, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with dat.*
hasten, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*with the idea of strain*), contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
he, she, it, is, ea, id, *gen.* ēius; ille, -a, -ud, *gen.* illīus.
head, caput, -itis, *n.*; (*chief*), prīn ceps, -cipis, *m.*
headlong, praeceps, -cipitis.
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
height, altitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
heights, loca superiōra, *n. pl.*
help (*verb*), adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *with dat.*; iuvō *or* adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum, *with acc.*
help (*subst.*), auxilium, -ī, *n.*
Helvetii, Helvētiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
hem in, contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
her (*poss.*), *the same as* **his.**
here, (*in this place*), hīc; (*hither*), hūc.
hesitate, dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with inf.*
hide, (*intrans.*), lateō, -ēre, uī; (*hide oneself*) mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *with* in *and acc.*
hide (*skin of an animal*), pellis, -is, *f.*
high, altus, -a, -um.
highest (*supreme*), summus, -a, -um.
high rank, nōbilitās, -tātis, *f.*
hill, collis, -is, *m.*; **hill-top,** summus collis.
hillock, tumulus, -ī, *m.*
himself, herself, itself, (*reflexive*), sē; (*intensive*), ipse, -a, -um, *gen.* ipsīus.
hinder, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum (*trans.*).
hindrance, impedīmentum, -ī, *n.*
hire, condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
his, (*referring to the subject*), suus, -a, -um; (*referring to another than the subject*), ēius.

Digitized by Google

hither, (*adj.*), citerior, -ius; (*adv.*), hūc.
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī; (*possess*), obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.
hold assizes, conventūs agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
hold out, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*; **at home,** domī; **from home,** domō; (*to*) **home,** domum.
hope (*verb*), spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
hope (*subst.*), spēs, speī, *f.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*
hospitality, hospitium, -ī, *n.*
host, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
hostage, obses, -idis, *m.*
hostile, inimīcus, -a, -um.
hostile act, maleficium, -ī, *n.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
how, (*with adjs. and advs.*), quam; (*with verbs*), quō modō, quem ad modum.
however, autem (*postpositive*).
how great, how important, quantus, -a, -um.
how long, quam diū.
how many, quot (*not followed by part. gen.*).
human being, homō, hominis, *m. and f.*
hundred, centum.
hurl back, reiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum.
hurry, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.

I

I, ego, meī.
Iccius, Iccius, -ī, *m.*
if, sī; **if not, unless,** nisi.
in, (*of place*), in, *prep. with abl., or locative of words like* domus, *names of towns, etc.*; (*of time*), *use the abl.*
in all, omnīnō.
inasmuch as, quoniam.
in a wonderful way, mīrum in modum.
in close array, cōnfertissimā aciē.
increase (*trans.*), augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum.
incredible, incrēdibilis, -e.
indulge, indulgeō, -ere, -dulsī, -dultum, *with dat.*
industriously, dīligenter.
inexperienced, imperītus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
infantry, (*subst.*), peditātus, -us, *m.*; *or the pl. of* **foot-soldier,** pedes, -itis, *m.*; (*adj.*), pedester, -tris, -tre.
infantryman, pedes, -itis, *m.*
inflict punishment, supplicium sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *with* dē *and abl.*
influence, (*verb*), addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum; (*subst.*), auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*
inform, certiōrem faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.
in front of, ante, *prep. with acc.*; (*with the idea of protection*), prō, *prep. with abl.*
in good condition, fīrmus, -a, -um.
inhabit, incolō, -ere, -coluī.
in light marching order, expedītus, -a, -um.
in order to, ut *or* eō cōnsiliō ut *with subj.*; *neg.*, nē.
in proportion to, prō, *prep. with abl.*
inquire, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
inspire, instil, iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *with dat. of the person and acc. of the thing.*
institution, īnstitūtum, -ī, *n.*
in succession, continuus, -a, -um.

Digitized by Google

intend, mihi, tibi, sibi, *etc.*, est in animō, *with inf.; or use* 1*st periphrastic* (" *I am about to do so-and-so*").
intention (*purpose*), cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
intentions (*spirit*), animus, -ī, *m.*
(interest), it is to the interest of, interest *followed by gen.; except that when the person interested is represented in English by a personal pronoun, Latin uses the abl. sing. fem. of the corresponding possessive.*
interests, rēs, reī, *f.*
interpose, interpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
interval, intervāllum, -ī, *n.*
intervene, intercēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum; *or pass. of* intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
in the meantime, interim.
in the neighborhood of, ad, *prep. with acc.*
in the same way, likewise, item.
into, in, *prep. with acc.*
in vain, frūstrā.
invite, invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
invite in, adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
iron, (*subst.*), ferrum, -ī, *n.*; (*adj.*), ferreus, -a, -um.
island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
Italy, Ītalia, -ae, *f.*
it is pretty certain, satis cōnstat.
it is true; to be sure, quidem (*postpositive*).
it results, fit, fierī, factum est.

J

javelin, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
join battle, proelium committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
journey (*subst.*), iter, itineris, *n.*
journey (*verb*), iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.
judge, iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
judgment (*good sense*), cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
Julius, Iūlius, -ī, *m.*
just as many, totidem.
justice, iūstitia, -ae, *f.*

K

keep, teneō, -ēre, -uī.
keep away *or* **from**, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with* ab *and abl., or abl. alone.*
keep in camp, castrīs contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
kill, interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum; (*put to death*), necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*cut down*), occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum.
kind, genus, -eris, *n.*
kindness, beneficium, -ī, *n.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kingdom, kingly power, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
kinsman, cōnsanguineus, -ī, *m.* (*adj. used as subst.*).
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum; (*understand*), intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum; (*by ascertaining*), *perf. of* nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum, *or of* cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum; **not know**, nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*
labor, labōrō, -are, -āvī, -atum.
lack (*verb*), careō, -ēre, -uī, *with abl.*
lack (*subst.*), inopia, -ae, *f.*
lake, lacus, -ūs, *m.*
land, fīnes, -ium, *m. pl.*; (*opposed to sea*), terra, -ae, *m.*
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*

Digitized by Google

large, magnus, -a, -um.
large number, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
launch, dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
lay aside, lay down, dēponō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.
lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
lead across, trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *with 2 acc. or* trans *and acc.*
lead back, redūcō, -ēre, -dūxī, -ductum.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*; (*political leader*), prīnceps, -cipis, *m.*
lead forth, prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, [-ductum.
lead out, ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
lead up, subdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.
lean forward, prōcumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitum.
learn, cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.
lease, redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum.
leave, (*abandon*), relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum; (*depart from*), discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *with* ab *or* ex *and abl.*
left (*opposed to right*), sinister, -tra, [-trum.
(left), what is left? quid est reliquī?
legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*
legionary, legiōnārius, -a, -um.
length, longitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
less, minor, -us; (*as subst.*), minus, minōris, *n.*; (*as adv.*), minus.
lessen, minuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum.
lest, nē.
let, licet, -ēre, -uit, *impers.*; (*make the mistake of letting*), committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *with* ut *and subj.*
let go, ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
letter, litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
liberty, lībertās, -tātis, *f.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
light, levis, -e.
like, similis, -e.
limit, fīnis, -is, *m.*
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, *f.*
line of march, iter, itineris, *n.*
linger, moror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
little, a (*with comparatives*), paulō; **very little**, minimē; **for a little while**, paulisper.
live (*among*), versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *with* in *and abl.*
load, onus, -eris, *n.*
lofty, altus, -a, -um.
long, (*adj.*), longus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), diū; *comp.* diūtius; *sup.* diūtissimē.
long for, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
longing, cupiditās, -tātis, *f.*
look, spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
look back, respiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectum.
look for, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
lot, (*casting of lots*), sors, sortis, *f.*; (*destiny*), fortūna, -ae, *f.*
low, īnferus, -a, -um; *comp.* īnferior; *sup.* īnfimus *or* īmus.
loyal, remain, in officiō maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
Lucius, Lūcius, -ī, *m.*

M

magistrate, see **official.**
make, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum; (*of a speech*), habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
make an attack, impetum faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, *with* in *and acc.*
make a reckoning, ratiōnem cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
make haste, mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
make out, cernō, -ere, crēvī, cretum.
make plain, ostendō, -ere, -tendī, [-tum.

Digitized by Google

make provision, provideō, -ere, -vīdī, -vīsum.
make requisition for, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with dat. of person asked and acc. of thing asked for.*
make the greatest effort, maximē labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
make up, invent, fingō, -ere, finxī, fictum.
make up one's mind, statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum.
make war, bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
make war on, bellum īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *with dat.*
man, (*human being*), homō, hominis, *m. and f.*; (*male*), vir, virī, *m.*
manner of life, cōnsuētūdō victūs.
many, multī, -ae, -a.
march, (*verb*), iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factum; (*subst.*), iter, itineris, *n.*
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, *m.*
marsh, palūs, -ūdis, *f.*
match for, pār, paris, *with dat.*
matter, rēs, reī, *f.*
may, licet, -ēre, -uit, *impers.*
means, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
meanwhile, in the meanwhile, intereā; interim.
meeting, conventus, -ūs, *m.*
meet with (*get*), nancīscor, -ī, nactus *and* nanctus sum.
memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*
mere, ipse, -a, -um, *gen.* ipsīus.
middle of, midst of, medius, -a, -um, *in agreement with word modified.*
midnight, nox media, noctis mediae, *f.*
midsummer, media aestās, mediae aestātis, *f.*
mile, mīlle passūs, *pl.* mīlia passuum.
military science, rēs mīlitāris, reī mīlitāris, *f.*
mind, animus, -ī, *m.*
mine, meus, -a, -um.
missile, tēlum, -ī, *n.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
more, (*subst.*), amplius, -ōris, *n.*; plūs, plūris, *n.*; (*adj.*), plūrēs, -a; (*adv.*), magis.
moreover, autem (*postpositive*).
mother, māter, mātris, *f.*
mound, agger, aggeris, *m.*
mount (*men on horseback*), impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *with acc. and dat.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
move about, vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
movement, mōtus, -ūs, *m.*
move up, adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum.
much, (*adj.*), multus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), (1) *with comparatives,* multō; (2) *of extent,* multum.
multitude, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
murder, *see* **kill.**
must, (1) oportet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., with acc. and inf. or with the subj.*; (2) use second periphr. conj.
my, meus, -a, -um.
myself, (*reflexive*), *oblique cases of* ego; (*intensive*), ipse, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, -inis, *n.*
name a day, diem dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
nation, populus, -ī, *m.*
native land, patria, -ae, *f.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
navigation, nāvigātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
near, (*prep. with acc.*), ad; (*adj.*), propinquus, -a, -um.
nearer, propior, -ius; *sup.*, proximus, -a, -um.
need, there is, opus est, *with abl. of*

Digitized by Google

the thing needed and dat. of the person in need. [tum.

neglect, neglegō, -ere, neglēxī, neglēc-

neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um; proximus, -a, -um; *as subst.*, **neighbor**, fīnitimus, -ī, *m.*

neither, neuter, -tra, -trum, *gen.* neutrīus.

neither . . . nor, neque . . . . neque, *or* nec . . . nec. *Before a vowel, only the form* neque *should be employed.*

Nervii, Nerviī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

never, numquam.

nevertheless, tamen.

new, novus, -a, -um.

news, nūntius, -ī, *m.*

next, (*adj.*), *the same as* **nearest**; (*adv.*), deinde.

next day, on the, posterō diē; postridiē ēius diēī.

night, nox, noctis, *f.*; **by night**, noctū; **midnight**, nox media.

nine, novem.

ninth, nōnus, -a, -um.

no, nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* nūllīus.

nobility, nōbilitās, -tātis, *f.*

noble, nōbilis, -e.

no longer, nōn iam.

none, (*no one*), nēmō. *Instead of gen.* nēminis *and abl.* nēmine, *use* nūllīus *and* nūllō; (*nothing*), nihil; (*adj.*), nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* nūllīus.

nor, neque *or* nec; nēve *or* neu. *Before a vowel, only the forms* neque *and* nēve *should be employed.* Nēve *and* neu *are used to introduce negative final clauses.*

north, septentriō, -ōnis, *m.* *Generally found in pl.*, septentriōnēs.

not, nōn.

not any longer, nōn iam.

not even, nē . . . quidem, *separated by the emphatic word.*

nothing, nihil, *n.*

not only . . . but also, nōn { modo / sōlum } . . { vērum / sed } etiam.

notwithstanding, tamen.

not yet, nōndum.

now, (*with past events still in mind*), iam; (*emphasizing the present*), nunc.

now and then, interdum.

number, numerus, -ī, *m.*; **great number**, multitūdō, -dinis, *f.*

O

oak, rōbur, -oris, *n.*

oath, iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, *n.*

obedient, dictō audiēns, -entis.

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī, *with dat.*

object, gravor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *with inf.*

object to (*blame*), reprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum.

obscure, occulō, -ere, -culuī, -cultum.

observe, animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.

ocean, Ōceanus, -ī, *m.* (*a proper noun in Latin*).

occupy, obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

offer, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.

office; official, magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*

of noble birth, nōbilis, -e.

of one's own accord, ūltrō.

often, saepe.

of this kind, ēius modī.

old, vetus, veteris.

older (*of persons*), māior nātū.

old-time, prīstinus, -a, -um.

on, (*of place*), in, *prep. with abl.*; (*of time*), *use the abl.*

Digitized by Google

on account of, (1) ob *or* propter, *preps. with the acc.;* (2) *abl. of cause.*

on all sides, undique.

one, ūnus, -a, -um, *gen.* ūnīus; **one** (*of two*), alter, -era, -erum, *gen.* alterius.

one at a time, singulī, -ae, -a.

on guard, in statiōne.

only, (*adj.*), sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* sōlīus; (*adv.*), sōlum; tantum.

onslaught, impetus, -ūs, *m.*

on the following day, postrīdiē eius diēī; posterō diē.

on the previous day, prīdiē.

on which account, quā rē.

opportunity, (*possibility*), potestās, -tātis, *f.;* (*effect of chance*), occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.;* **give an opportunity,** potestātem faciō, facere, fēcī, factum.

oppress, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.

or, aut; vel; (*in interrogative sentences*), an.

oration, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

order, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with dat. and final clause, or* iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, *with acc. and inf.*

Orgetorix, Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*

origin, orīgō, -ginis, *f.*

O that, utinam, *neg.* nē.

other, (*another*), alius, -a, -ud. *Instead of the gen.* alīus, *use either the adj.* aliēnus *in agreement with the modified word, or* alterius, *the gen. of* alter; (*other of two*), alter, -era, -erum, *gen.* alterius; **the other, the rest** (cēterus), -a, -um; reliquus, -a, um.

ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with inf.;* oportet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., with acc. and inf. or subj. without* ut.

our, ours, noster, -tra, -trum.

ourselves, (*reflexive*), *oblique cases of* nōs; (*intensive*), ipsī, -ae, -a.

out of breath, exanimātus, -a, -um.

outcome, ēventus, -ūs, *m.*

outrage, maleficium, -ī, *n.*

outstretched, *perf. pass. part. of* pandō, -ere, pandī, passum.

overtake, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.

own (*adj.*), *gen. of* ipse, -a, -um; *or the poss. adjs.* meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, *etc., in agreement with the thing possessed; or combine the two.*

P

palisade, vāllum, -ī, *n.*

panic-stricken, timōre perterritus, -a, -um.

pardon, ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum, *with dat.*

part, pars, partis, *f.*

pass (*way over a mountain*), iter, itineris, *n.*

pass (*of intervals of time*), intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.

patriotic, patriae amāns, -antis.

pay, pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsum; **pay a penalty,** poenās pendere.

peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*

people, (*nation*), populus, -ī, *m.;* (*persons*), hominēs, -um, *m. pl.*

perceive, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum.

perform, fungor, -ī, fūnctus sum, *with abl.*

peril, perīculum, -ī, *n.*

permanently, perpetuō.

permitted, be, licet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., with acc. or dat. and inf., or subj. without* ut.

Digitized by Google

personal property, rēs familiāris, reī familiāris, *f.*

persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum.

phalanx, phalanx, -angis, *f.*

pilot, gubernātor, -ōris, *m.*

pitch (*a camp*), pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.

pity, misereor, -ērī, -itus sum, *with gen.; also used impersonally with acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing.*

place, locus, -ī, *m. The plural is regularly neuter*, loca; locī *being used of places in a book.*

place at intervals, dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.

place in command, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with acc. and dat.*

plan, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*

please, placeō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *with dat.;* dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc.*

plunder, praedor, -ārī, -ātus sum.

Pompey, Pompēius, -ī, *m.*

populace, vulgus, -ī, *n. The acc. sing. is* vulgus.

popularity, grātia, -ae, *f.*

port, portus, -ūs, *m.*

position, locus, -ī, *m.*

possess, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

power, potestās, -tātis, *f.*

powerful, potēns, -entis; **be very powerful**, plūrimum posse; largiter posse.

practise, exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

praise, (*verb*), laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*subst.*), laus, laudis, *f.*

prayer (prex, precis), *f. Usually in pl.; nom. sing. not found.*

prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī.

prepare, prepare for, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

presence, in his own, ipsō praesente.

present, (*furnish*), praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; (*of an opportunity*), offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum.

preserve formation, ōrdinēs servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

press forward, īnstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātum.

pretext, causa, -ae, *f.*

prevail upon, indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.

prevent, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

previously, anteā.

price, pretium, -ī, *n.*

prisoner, captīvus, -ī, *m.*

private, prīvātus, -a, -um.

privately, prīvātim.

prize, praemium, -ī, *n.*

proconsul, prōcōnsul, -ulis, *m.*

prolong, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.

promise, polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum.

propraetor, prōpraetor, -ōris, *m.*

prosperous, *pres. part. of* flōreō, -ēre, -uī.

prosperity, rēs secundae, rērum secundārum, *f. pl.*

protect, (*defend*), dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *with* ab *and abl.*

protecting force, protection, praesidium, -ī, *n.*

protection, take under one's, in fidem recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

provide for the punishment of, animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, *with* in *ana acc.*

provided that, dum.

province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*

prowess, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*

public, pūblicus, -a, -um.

purpose, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.;* **for the purpose of**, causā (*abl.*), *following a gen.*

Digitized by Google

pursue, persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
put before, praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *with acc. and dat.*
put to death, interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum; necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
put to flight, in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datum.

Q

quaestor, quaestor, -ōris, *m.*
quantity, a, cōpia, -ae, *f.*
quarter (*locality*), pars, partis, *f.*
question, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
quickly, celeriter.
Quintus, Quīntus, -ī, *m.*

R

raft, ratis, -is, *f.*
raise, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
rally, concursus, -ūs, *m.*
rampart, vāllum, -ī, *n.*
rapidly, celeriter.
rather, *use the comparative.*
rather than, quam; potius quam.
ravage, populor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
reach, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* ad *and acc., or acc. alone of words like* domus, *names of towns, etc.*
reach to (*extend*), attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum.
ready, parātus, -a, -um.
realize, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
rear-guard, novissimum agmen, novissimī agminis, *n.*
reason, causa, -ae, *f.*
recall, revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
receive, accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum; (*of an enemy's charge*), excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
recent, recēns, -centis.
recklessly, temerē.
reckoning, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
recollection, memoria, -ae, *f.*
recover from, mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *with* ex *and abl.*
redoubt, castellum, -ī, *n.*
reduce, redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *with* ad *and acc.*
refrain, temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with* ab *and abl.*
refuse, recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with inf.*, or quō minus (quīn) *and subj.*
region, locus, -ī, *m.*; regiō, -ōnis, *f.*
reinforcement(s), subsidium, -ī, *n.*
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum; (*stay behind*), remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum.
remember, meminī, meminisse, *with gen. or acc.*; memoriā teneō, -ēre, -uī, *with acc.*
remotest, extrēmus, -a, -um.
remove, (*move back*), removeō, -ēre, -movī, -motum; (*abolish*), tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.
repair, reficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
repent, paenitet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., with acc. of person and gen. of thing.*
reply, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.
report, (*announce*), nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*bring back word*), renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reproach, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
request, petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum.
requisition, make, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with acc. of thing asked for and dat. of the person.*
resist, resistō, -ere, -stitī, *with dat.*
rest of, reliquus, -a, -um, *in agreement with word modified.*
rest on, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, *with acc. of thing rested, and* in *with abl. of that on which it rests.*

Digitized by Google

restore, restituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum.
restrain, temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *with dat.*
result, ēventus, -ūs, *m.*
retain, retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
retainer, cliēns, -entis, *m.*
retreat, mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
return, (1) revertor, -ī, -versus sum. *In the perfect tenses the active forms,* revertī, *etc., are usual.* (2) mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
reveal, see **disclose**.
revenue, stīpendium, -ī, *n.*
revolution, rēs novae, rērum novārum, *f. pl.*
reward, mūnus, -eris, *n.*
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*
right, dexter, -tra, -trum, *and* -tera, -terum.
ripe, mātūrus, -a, -um.
risk (*subst.*), perīculum, -ī, *n.*
risk (*verb*), temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
river, flūmen, -minis, *n.*
rob, prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
Roman, (*adj.*), Rōmānus, -a, -um; (*subst.*), Rōmānus, -ī, *m.*
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
rout (*verb*), pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.
rout (*subst.*), fuga, -ae, *f.*
route, iter, itineris, *n.*
royal power, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
rumor, rūmor, -ōris, *m.*
run away, fugiō, fugere, fūgī; terga vertō, -ere, vertī, versum.
run down, dēcurrō, -ere, -currī (*or* -cucurrī), -cursum.
rush, impetus, -ūs, *m.*
rush together, concurrō, -ere, -currī (*or* -cucurrī), -cursum.

S

safe, (*unharmed*), incolumis, -e.
safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*
sail (*verb*), nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
sail (*subst.*), vēlum, -ī, *n.*
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem, *gen.* ēiusdem.
Saône, Arar, Araris, *m.*
save, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; (*introducing direct narration*), inquam, inquit; **say that . . . not**, negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
scale, ascendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsum.
scare, perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
scatter, dispergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersum.
scheme, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
seacoast, ōra maritima, ōrae maritimae, *f.*
secretly, clam.
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.
seek, petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum.
seem, *pass. of* videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
select, dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
sell, vendō, -dere, -didī, -ditum; *instead of the passive, use the active verb* vēneō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum.
send back, remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
send for, arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.
send in advance, praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
send up, submittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.
separate, dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum.

Digitized by Google

Sequani, Sēquanī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
serious, gravis, -e.
service, mūnus, -eris, *n.*
set (*a fire*), subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum.
set free, līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
set out, set forth, proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum.
settle, cōnstituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum.
settled (*adj.*), *perf. pass. part. of* īnstituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum.
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
several, complūrēs, -a *and* -ia, *gen.* complūrium; aliquot.
severe, gravis, -e.
severely, graviter.
shallow (*flat*), plānus, -a, -um.
sharer, particeps, -cipis, *m.* (*adj. used as subst.*), *with obj. gen.*
shed, vīnea, -ae, *f.*
shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
shoot, cōniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum.
short, brevis, -e.
shout, (*verb*), conclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*subst.*), clāmor, -ōris, *m.*
show, (*display*), ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum; (*teach or tell*), doceō, -ere, -uī, doctum, *with two accs.*
show gratitude, grātiam referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, *f.*
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.
side, latus, -eris, *n.*
sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*
signal, sīgnum, -ī, *n.*
silver (*subst.*), argentum, -ī, *n.*
silver (*adj.*), argenteus, -a, -um.
since, cum.
sister, soror, -ōris, *f.*
six, sex.
six hundred, sēscentī, -ae, -a.
sixteen, sēdecim.
sixty, sexāgintā.
size, magnitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
skilled, perītus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
skirmish, proelium, -ī, *n.*
slavery, servitūs, -tūtis, *f.*
slay, interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
slope, vergō, -ere.
slow, tardus, -a, -um.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
so, adeō; ita; sīc; (*with adjs. and advs.*), tam.
so great, tantus, -a, -um.
soldier, mīles, -itis, *m.*
so long as, (*temporal*), dum; quam diū; (*proviso*), dum.
so many, tot (*does not take gen.*).
some, some one, something, aliquis, aliquid; *adjective forms*, aliquī, aliqua, aliquod; nōnnūllī, -ae, -a; (*certain*), quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, *and adj.* quoddam.
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī.
son, fīlius, -ī, *m.*; *voc.* fīlī.
soon, mox.
sorrowful, be, doleō, -ēre, -uī.
space, spatium, -ī, *n.*
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, *f.*
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum, *with dat.*
speak, loquor, -ī, locūtus sum.
spear, pīlum, -ī, *n.*
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*; **make a speech**, ōrātiōnem habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
speed (*running*), cursus, -ūs, *m.*
spent (*exhausted*), cōnfectus, -a, -um.
spirit, animus, -ī, *m.*
spring (*from*), nāscor, -ī, nātus sum.
stand, *perf. of* cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī.
start, proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum.

Digitized by Google

state, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*
station, collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
stay, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
still, etiam, adhuc.
stone, lapis, -idis, *m.*
stop, (*cease from*), intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum; (*prevent*), prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with inf.*
stratagem, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
strengthen, mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
strike (*of a camp*), moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.
sudden, repentīnus, -a, -um.
strip, nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
strive, struggle, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum; **strive to reach,** contendere ad, *with acc.*
subdue, pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
such, tālis, -e; ēius modī.
sudden, repentīnus, -a, -um.
Suessiones, Suessiōnēs, -um, *m. pl.*
suffer, patior, patī, passus sum; **suffer disaster,** calamitātem accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
suit, see **please.**
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
summer, aestās, -tātis, *f.*
summon, ad mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
suppliantly, supplex, -icis (*adj. used where English uses adv.*).
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*
supply, cōpia, -ae, *f.*; **supply of grain,** rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, *f.*
(**suppose**) **than one would suppose,** opīniōne, *abl. of comparison.*
surely, profectō.
surpass, praestō, -āre, -stitī, *with dat.*
surrender (*verb*), dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum; (*subst.*), dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*
surround, (*stand round*), circumsistō, -sistere, -stitī; (*come round*), circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; (*surround with*), circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -dātum.
survive, supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
suspect, suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
suspicion, suspiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
sway, rule, imperium, -ī, *n.*
swift, celer, -eris, -ere; vēlōx, -ōcis.
swiftness, celeritās, -tātis, *f.*
sword, gladius, -ī, *m.*

T

take, (*carry*), portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; (*conduct*), dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum; (*by storm*), expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*capture*), capiō, capere, cēpī, captum.
take away, adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptum.
take care, cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
take one's side, faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, *with dat.*
take possession of, pōtior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *with abl.*
take thought, cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -sultum, *with dat.*
take up one's position, cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum.
talk, loquor, -ī, locūtus sum.
tarry, cunctor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
tax, vectīgal, -ālis, *n.*
tear, lacrima, -ae, *f.*
tell, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.
ten, decem.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terms, *pl. of* condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
territories, *pl. of* fīnis, -is, *m.*
testudo, testūdō, -dinis, *f.*
than, quam.
thank, grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *with dat.*

Digitized by Google

that (*pronoun*), (1) (*demonstrat.*), ille, -a, -ud, *gen.* illīus; is, ea, id, *gen.* ēius; **that of yours,** iste, -a, -ud, *gen.* istīus; (2) (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod, *gen.* cūius.

that (*conj.*), ut; (*after negative expressions of doubt*), quīn.

that . . . not, (*in final clauses*), nē; (*in consecutive clauses*), ut . . . nōn, *or* (*following a negative*) quīn.

their, (*referring to the subject*), suus, -a, -um; (*referring to another than the subject*), *gen. pl. of* is, ea, id.

the moment that, cum prīmum.

themselves, (*reflexive*), suī; (*intensive*), ipsī, -ae, -a.

then, (*of time*), tum; (*of inference*), igitur.

then and only then, tum dēmum.

thence, inde.

the other, (*of two*), alter, -era, -erum; **the others,** cēterī, -ae, -a.

there, ibi; (*thither, to that place*), eō.

therefore, igitur; quā rē; quam ob rem.

there is the additional circumstance that; there is the additional reason that; there is the added fact that, accēdit quod, *with ind.* (Accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.)

there is no doubt that, nōn est dubium quīn, *with subj.*

thick, dēnsus, -a, -um.

thing, rēs, reī, *f.*

think, exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

third, tertius, -a, -um.

thirty, trīgintā.

this, hīc, haec, hōc.

thoroughly terrify, perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

thousand, mille, *in sing. indecl. adj.; in pl.* mīlia, -ium, *n. subst.*

three, trēs, tria.

three at once, ternī, -ae, -a.

three days (*period of*), trīduum, -ī, *n.*

three hundred, trecenti, -ae, -a.

thrice, ter.

throne (*kingdom*), rēgnum, -ī, *n.*

through, per, *prep. with acc.*

throw, cōniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum.

throw into disorder, perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

thus, sīc.

tide, aestus, -ūs, *m.*

time, tempus, -oris, *n.;* **at this** *or* **that time,** id temporis.

tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.

tired of, be, taedet, -ēre, -uit, *impers., with acc. of the person and gen. of the thing.*

Titus, Titus, -ī, *m.*

to (*of motion*), ad; **in;** *preps. with acc.*

to-day, hodiē.

together with, cum *or* unā cum, *with abl.*

to-morrow, crās.

tongue, lingua, -ae, *f.*

too, *use the comparative.*

too little, parum.

top of, summus, -a, -um, *in agreement with word modified.*

torture, cruciātus, -ūs, *m.*

toss about, iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

to the same place, eōdem.

toward, towards, (*of motion*), ad, *prep. with the acc.;* (*of disposition*), in *or* ergā, *preps. with the acc.*

tower, turris, -is, f., *acc.* turrim.

town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*

tract, locus, -ī, *m.;* regiō, -ōnis, *f.*

trader, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*

Digitized by Google

training, exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
transport, trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
travel to (reach), perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *with* ad *and acc., or acc. alone of* domus, rūs, *names of towns, etc.*
treat with, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *with* cum *and abl.*
tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*
tribe, nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*
triple, triplex, -icis.
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
trouble, perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
true, vērus, -a, -um.
trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.*
trust, (*have confidence in*), cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, *with dat.;* (*in trust*), mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
try, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
try to find out, explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
turn away, āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
twelve, duodecim.
twenty, vīgintī.
twice, bis.
two, duo, duae, duo.
two days (*period of*), bīduum, -ī, *n.*
twofold, anceps, -cipitis.
two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a.

U

unarmed, inermis, -e.
uncommon, ēgregius, -a, -um.
under, sub, *prep. with abl. and acc.*
undergo, subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum.
undertake, suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
unexpected, repentīnus, -a, -um.
unexpectedly, improvīsō *or* dē improvīsō.
unfavorable ground, locus aliēnus, locī aliēnī, *m.*
unite, mē, tē, sē, *etc.*, coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, *with* cum *and abl.*
unknown, ignōtus, -a, -um.
unless, nisi.
unprotected, apertus, -a, -um.
unsuccessful, adversus, -a, -um.
until, dum; quoad.
untroubled, aequus, -a, -um.
unwilling, invītus, -a, -um.
unwilling, be, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.
upbraid, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
upon, in, *prep. with abl.*
uproar, strepitus, -ūs, *m.*
urge, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
urge on, impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.
use, (*verb*), ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *with abl.*
use, (*subst.*), ūsus, -ūs, *m.*
used to, *express by imperf., or use* soleō, -ēre, -itus sum, *semi-deponent with inf.*
useful, ūtilis, -e.
utmost, summus, -a, -um.

V

valiantly, fortiter.
valor, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
van, vanguard, prīmum agmen, prīmī agminis, *n.*
varying, varius, -a, -um.
vassal, cliēns, -entis, *m.*
Veneti, Venetī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
very, *use the superlative;* (= "*actual*"), ipse, -a, -um, *gen.* ipsīus.
very little, minimē.
very much, maximē.
victorious, *use the subst.*, victor, victōris, *m.*, "*victor,*" *in apposition.*

Digitized by Google

victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
view (*opinion*), sententia, -ae, *f.*
village, vīcus, -ī, *m.*
visit on, ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *with* in *and acc.*
voice, vōx, vōcis, *f.*

W

wage, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, *with* cum *and abl.*
wait, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*
want, volō, velle, voluī.
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
warship, nāvis longa, nāvis longae, *f.*
waste, cōnsumō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum.
watch, vigilia, -ae, *f.*
wave, fluctus, -ūs, *m.*
way, via, -ae, *f.*
weapons, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
wear, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
wearied, dēfessus, -a, -um.
weather, tempestās, -tātis, *f.*
weep, fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum.
weigh anchor, solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum.
weight, pondus, -eris, *n.*
well, bene.
well, be, valeo, -ēre, -uī.
well disposed, *say "of good spirit"* (*abl. of description*).
west, sōlis occāsus, -ūs, *m.*
what, (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interr.*) quis, quid, *and adj.*, quī, quae, quod.
whatever, quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque.
what you will, quīvis, quaevis, quodvis.
when, cum; ubi.
whence, unde.
whenever, cum.
where, ubi; (*whither*), quō.
wherefore, quā rē; quam ob rem.
whether . . . or (*in alternative questions*), utrum . . . an; -ne . . . an; (*in alternative conditions*), sīve . . . sīve; seu . . . seu.
which, (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interr.*), quis, quid, *and adj.* quī, quae, quod,
which (*of two*), uter, -tra, -trum, *gen.* utrīus.
while, dum.
whither, quō.
who, (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interr.*), quis, quid, *and adj.* quī, quae, quod.
whole (*of*), tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.* tōtīus.
why, cūr; quid.
widely, lātē.
width, lātitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*
wild, ferus, -a, -um.
will, voluntās, -tātis, *f.*
win, cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.
wind, ventus, -ī, *m.*
wine, vīnum, -ī, *n.*
wing (*of an army*), cornū, -ūs, *n.* (*lit.* "*horn*").
winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*
winter-quarters, hīberna, -ōrum (*sc.* castra), *n. pl.*
wish (*verb*), (*be willing*), volō, velle, voluī; (*desire*), cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum.
wish (*subst.*), voluntās, -tātis, *f.*
with (*to denote manner or association*), cum, *prep. with the abl.*; (*to denote the instrument*), *abl. alone.*
with all speed, cōnfēstim.
with difficulty, vix.
withdraw (*trans.*), dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum.

Digitized by Google

withdraw from battle, pugnā excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.
without, sine, *prep. with abl.*
withstand, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.
woman, mulier, -ieris, *f.*
wood, silva, -ae, *f.*
word, verbum, -ī, *n.*
work, opus, -eris, *n.*
worse, (*general word*), peior, -ius; (*of revenues*), dēterior, -ius.
worthy, dignus, -a, -um, *with abl.*, *or with rel. clause in the subj.*
would that, utinam, *neg.* nē.
wound, (*verb*), vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; (*subst.*), vulnus, -eris, *n.*
wounded, saucius, -a, -um.
write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum.
wrong, (*verb*), noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *with dat.*; (*subst.*), iniūria, -ae, *f.*

Y

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
yesterday, herī.
yet, tamen.
yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum.
yoke, iugum, -ī, *n.*
you, tū, tuī, *pl.* vōs.
younger, minor nātū; *pl.*, minōrēs nātū.
your, yours, (*of one*), tuus, -a, -um, (*of more than one*), vester, -tra, -trum.
yourself (*reflexive*), *oblique cases of* tū, tuī; (*intensive*), ipse, -a, -um. *gen.* ipsīus.
youth, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google